

# Chapter 1a

## Propositional Logic Review I

*Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)*

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 1** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

**Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang**

*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Contents

## ① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

## ② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Excursion: Intuitionistic Logic

## ③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

## ④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

## ⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form



- 1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences
- 2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction
- 3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language
- 4 Semantics of Propositional Logic
- 5 Conjunctive Normal Form

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Study of atomic propositions

Propositions are built from sentences whose internal structure is not of concern.

## Building propositions

Boolean operators are used to construct propositions out of simpler propositions.

## Example for Propositional Calculus

- **Atomic proposition:** One plus one equals two.
- **Atomic proposition:** The earth revolves around the sun.
- **Combined proposition:** One plus one equals two *and* the earth revolves around the sun.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Goals and Main Result of Propositional Calculus



## Meaning of formula

Associate meaning to a set of formulas by assigning a value *true* or *false* to every formula in the set.

## Proofs

Symbol sequence that formally establishes whether a formula is always true.

## Soundness and completeness

The set of provable formulas is the same as the set of formulas which are always true.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Uses of Propositional Calculus

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



## Hardware design

The production of logic circuits uses propositional calculus at all phases; specification, design, testing.

## Verification

Verification of hardware and software makes extensive use of propositional calculus.

## Problem solving

Decision problems (scheduling, timetabling, etc) can be expressed as satisfiability problems in propositional calculus.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Richer language

Instead of dealing with atomic propositions, predicate calculus provides the formulation of statements involving sets, functions and relations on these sets.

## Quantifiers

Predicate calculus provides statements that all or some elements of a set have specified properties.

## Compositionality

Similar to propositional calculus, formulas can be built from composites using logical connectives.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Programming Language Semantics

The meaning of programs such as

`if x >= 0 then y := sqrt(x) else y := abs(x)`

can be captured with formulas of predicate calculus:

$$\forall x \forall y (y' = x \wedge (x \geq 0 \rightarrow y' = \sqrt{x}) \wedge (\neg(x \geq 0) \rightarrow y' = |x|))$$

## Other Uses of Predicate Calculus

- **Specification:** Formally specify the purpose of a program in order to serve as input for software design,
- **Verification:** Prove the correctness of a program with respect to its specification.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# An Example for Specification



Let  $P$  be a program of the form

```
while a <> b do
    if a > b then a := a - b else a:= b - a;
```

The specification of the program is given by the formula

$$\{a \geq 0 \wedge b \geq 0\} \ P \ \{a = \gcd(a, b)\}$$

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Logic in Theorem Proving, Logic Programming, and Other Systems of Logic

## Theorem proving

Formal logic has been used to design programs that can automatically prove mathematical theorems.

## Logic programming

Research in theorem proving has led to an efficient way of proving formulas in predicate calculus, called *resolution*, which forms the basis for *logic programming*.

## Some Other Systems of Logic

- **Three-valued logic:** A third truth value (denoting “don’t know” or “undetermined”) is often useful.
- **Intuitionistic logic:** A mathematical object is accepted only if a finite construction can be given for it.
- **Temporal logic:** Integrates time-dependent constructs such as (“always” and “eventually”) explicitly into a logic framework; useful for reasoning about real-time systems.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## 1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

## 2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

## 3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

## 4 Semantics of Propositional Logic

## 5 Conjunctive Normal Form

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Declarative Sentences

The language of propositional logic is based on *propositions* or *declarative sentences*.

## Declarative Sentences

Sentences which one can—in principle—argue as being true or false.

## Examples

- ① The sum of the numbers 3 and 5 equals 8.
- ② Jane reacted violently to Jack's accusations.
- ③ Every natural number  $> 2$  is the sum of two prime numbers.
- ④ All Martians like pepperoni on their pizza.

## Not Examples

- Could you please pass me the salt?
- Ready, steady, go!
- May fortune come your way.



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Putting Propositions Together

## Example 1.1

If the train arrives late and there are no taxis at the station then John is late for his meeting.

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

## Example 1.2

If it is raining and Jane does not have her umbrella with her then she will get wet.

Jane is not wet.

It is raining.

Therefore, Jane has her umbrella with her.



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Focus on Structure

We are primarily concerned about the structure of arguments in this class, not the validity of statements in a particular domain.

We therefore simply abbreviate sentences by letters such as  $p$ ,  $q$ ,  $r$ ,  $p_1$ ,  $p_2$  etc.

### From Concrete Propositions to Letters - Example 1.1

If the train arrives late and  
there are no taxis at the station then  
John is late for his meeting.

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

becomes

### Letter version

If  $p$  and not  $q$ , then  $r$ . Not  $r$ .  $p$ . Therefore,  $q$ .



## From Concrete Propositions to Letters - Example 1.2

If it is raining and  
Jane does not have her umbrella with her then  
she will get wet.

Jane is not wet.

It is raining.

Therefore, Jane has her umbrella with her.

has

**the same letter version**

If  $p$  and not  $q$ , then  $r$ . Not  $r$ .  $p$ . Therefore,  $q$ .

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Notations/Symbols

Sentences like “**If  $p$  and not  $q$ , then  $r$ .**” occur frequently. Instead of English words such as “**if...then**”, “**and**”, “**not**”, it is more convenient to use symbols such as  $\rightarrow$ ,  $\wedge$ ,  $\neg$ .

$\neg$ : negation of  $p$  is denoted by  $\neg p$ .

$\vee$ : disjunction of  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \vee r$ , meaning at least one of the two statements is true.

$\wedge$ : conjunction of  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \wedge r$ , meaning both are true.

$\rightarrow$ : implication between  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \rightarrow r$ , meaning that  $r$  is a logical consequence of  $p$ .  $p$  is called the *antecedent*, and  $r$  the *consequent*.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Example 1.1 Revisited

### From Example 1.1

If the train arrives late and there are no taxis at the station then John is late for his meeting.

### Symbolic Propositions

We replaced “the train arrives late” by  $p$ , etc.

The statement becomes: If  $p$  and not  $q$ , then  $r$ .

### Symbolic Connectives

With symbolic connectives, the statement becomes:

$$p \wedge \neg q \rightarrow r$$



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## 1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

## 2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Excursion: Intuitionistic Logic

## 3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

## 4 Semantics of Propositional Logic

## 5 Conjunctive Normal Form



## Objective

We would like to develop a *calculus* for reasoning about propositions, so that we can establish the validity of statements such as Example 1.1.

## Idea

We introduce *proof rules* that allow us to derive a formula  $\psi$  from a number of other formulas  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ .

## Notation

We write a *sequent*  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$  to denote that we can derive  $\psi$  from  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ .

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Example 1.1 Revisited

### English

If the train arrives late and there are no taxis at the station then John is late for his meeting.

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

### Sequent

$$p \wedge \neg q \rightarrow r, \neg r, p \vdash q$$

### Remaining task

Develop a set of proof rules that allows us to establish such sequents.



# Rules for Conjunction

## Introduction of Conjunction

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

## Elimination of Conjunction

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\phi} [\wedge e_1] \qquad \frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\psi} [\wedge e_2]$$

[Contents](#)
[Introduction](#)
[Declarative Sentences](#)
[Natural Deduction](#)
[Sequents](#)
[Rules for natural deduction](#)
[Basic and Derived Rules](#)
[Intuitionistic Logic](#)
[Formal Language](#)
[Semantics](#)
[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)
[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)
[Normal Form](#)
[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Example of Proof

To show

$$p \wedge q, r \vdash q \wedge r.$$

## How to start?

$$p \wedge q \quad r,$$

$$q \wedge r.$$

## Proof Step-by-Step

- ①  $p \wedge q$  (premise)
- ②  $r$  (premise)
- ③  $q$  (by using Rule  $\wedge e_2$  and Item 1)
- ④  $q \wedge r$  (by using Rule  $\wedge i$  and Items 3 and 2)

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Graphical Representation of Proof

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



$$\frac{p \wedge q}{\frac{q}{[\wedge e_2] \quad r}} \quad [\wedge i] \quad q \wedge r$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Where are we heading with this?

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



- We would like to prove sequents of the form  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$
- We introduce rules that allow us to form “legal” proofs
- Then any proof of any formula  $\psi$  using the premises  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$  is considered “correct”.
- Can we say that sequents with a correct proof are somehow “valid”, or “meaningful”?
- What does it mean to be meaningful?
- Can we say that any meaningful sequent has a valid proof?
- ...but first back to the proof rules...

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Double Negation

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\neg\neg e} \quad \frac{\phi}{\neg\neg i}$$

$$\phi \qquad \qquad \neg\neg\phi$$

## Eliminating Implication

$$\frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$

## Example

$p :=$  "It rained," and  $p \rightarrow q :=$  "If it rained, then the street is wet."  
We can conclude from these two that the street is indeed wet.

[Contents](#)
[Introduction](#)
[Declarative Sentences](#)
[Natural Deduction](#)
[Sequents](#)
[Rules for natural deduction](#)
[Basic and Derived Rules](#)
[Intuitionistic Logic](#)
[Formal Language](#)
[Semantics](#)
[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)
[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)
[Normal Form](#)
[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Modus Ponens

The rule

$$\frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$

is often called “Modus Ponens” (or MP)

## Origin of term

“Modus ponens” is an abbreviation of the Latin “modus ponendo ponens” which means in English “mode that affirms by affirming”. More precisely, we could say “mode that affirms the antecedent of an implication”.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Modus Tollens

A similar rule of “Modus Ponens”,

$$\frac{\phi \rightarrow \psi \quad \neg\psi}{\neg\phi} [MT]$$

is called “Modus Tollens” (or MT).

## Origin of term

“Modus tollens” is an abbreviation of the Latin “modus tollendo tollens” which means in English “mode that denies by denying”. More precisely, we could say “mode that denies the consequent of an implication”.



## Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Example

$$p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r), p, \neg r \vdash \neg q$$

1	$p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r)$	premise
2	$p$	premise
3	$\neg r$	premise
4	$q \rightarrow r$	$\rightarrow_e 1, 2$
5	$\neg q$	MT 4,3



# How to introduce implication?

Compare the sequent (MT)

$$p \rightarrow q, \neg q \vdash \neg p$$

with the sequent

$$p \rightarrow q \vdash \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$$

The second sequent should be provable, but we don't have a rule to introduce implication yet!

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Proof We Would Like To Have



$$p \rightarrow q \vdash \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$$

1  $p \rightarrow q$  premise

2  $\neg q$  assumption

3  $\neg p$  MT 1,2

4  $\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$   $\rightarrow_i 2-3$

We can start a box with an *assumption*, and use previously proven propositions (including premises) from the outside in the box.  
We cannot use assumptions from inside the box in rules outside the box.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Rule for Introduction of Implication

## Introduction of Implication

$$\frac{\phi \quad \vdots \quad \psi}{\phi \rightarrow \psi} [\rightarrow i]$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Rule for Disjunction

## Introduction of Disjunction

$$\frac{\phi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_1] \qquad \frac{\psi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_2]$$

## Elimination of Disjunction

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{c} \psi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}}{\chi} [\vee e]$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Example

1	$p \wedge (q \vee r)$	premise
2	$p$	$\wedge e_1 1$
3	$q \vee r$	$\wedge e_2 1$

4	$q$	assumption
5	$p \wedge q$	$\wedge i 2,4$
6	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee i_1 5$

7	$r$	assumption
8	$p \wedge r$	$\wedge i 2,7$
9	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee i_2 8$

10	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee e 3, 4\text{--}6, 7\text{--}9$
----	----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Special Propositions

- Recall: We are only interested in the truth value of propositions, not the subject matter that they refer to.
- Therefore, all propositions that we all agree must be true are the same!
- Example:  $p \rightarrow p$ ,  $p \vee \neg p$
- We denote the proposition that is always true (**tautology**) using the symbol  $\top$ .

## Another Special Proposition

- Similarly, we denote the proposition that is always false (**contradiction**) using the symbol  $\perp$ .
- Example:  $p \wedge \neg p$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Rule for Negation

## Elimination of Negation

$$\frac{\phi \quad \neg\phi}{\perp} [\neg e]$$

## Introduction of Negation

$$\frac{\boxed{\phi \quad \vdots \perp}}{[\neg i]} \neg\phi$$



## Elimination of $\perp$

$$\frac{\perp}{\phi} [\perp e]$$

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[\[Ve\]](#)[Semantics](#)  
Meaning of Logical Connectives[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

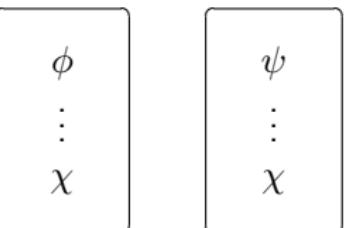
# Basic Rules (conjunction and disjunction)

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\phi} [\wedge e_1]$$

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\psi} [\wedge e_2]$$

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_1] \quad \frac{\phi \vee \psi}{\chi} [\vee i_2]$$



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

$$\frac{\phi \quad \vdots \quad \psi}{\phi \rightarrow \psi} [\rightarrow i] \qquad \frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$

# Basic Rules (implication)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \phi \\
 \vdots \\
 \perp \\
 \hline
 \neg\phi \qquad [\neg i] \\
 \hline
 \neg\phi
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \phi \qquad \neg\phi \\
 \hline
 \perp \qquad [\neg e]
 \end{array}$$

# Basic Rules (negation)

# Basic Rules ( $\perp$ and double negation)

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



$$\frac{}{\perp} \perp e$$

$\phi$

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\neg\neg e}$$

$\phi$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Some Derived Rules: Introduction of Double Negation

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



$$\frac{\phi}{\neg\neg i}$$
$$\neg\neg\phi$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Example: Deriving $\neg\neg i$ from $\neg i$ and $\neg e$

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



1	$\phi$	premise
2	$\neg\phi$	assumption
3	$\perp$	$\neg e \ 1, 2$
4	$\neg\neg\phi$	$\neg i \ 2-3$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Some Derived Rules: Modus Tollens

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



$$\frac{\phi \rightarrow \psi \quad \neg\psi}{\neg\phi} [MT]$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Some Derived Rules: Proof By Contradiction

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



$$\frac{\neg\phi \quad \vdots \quad \perp}{\phi} [\text{PBC}]$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Some Derived Rules: Law of Excluded Middle

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical  
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and  
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

————— [LEM]

$$\phi \vee \neg\phi$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Motivation

Consider the following theorem.

## Theorem

There exist irrational numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational.

Let us call this theorem  $\chi$ . We give a Proof Outline for  $\chi$ .

Let  $p$  be the following proposition.

## Proposition $p$

$\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  is rational.

Then the proof of  $\chi$  goes like this:

$$\frac{\frac{\frac{p}{\vdots} \quad \frac{\neg p}{\vdots}}{\chi} \quad \frac{\frac{p \vee \neg p}{[LEM]}}{\chi}}{\chi} [\vee e]$$



$p$

$\vdots$

$\chi$

Assume  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  is rational. Choose  $a$  and  $b$  to be  $\sqrt{2}$ , and we have found irrational  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational. Thus Theorem  $\chi$  holds under the assumption  $p$ .

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## In detail (1)



$\neg p$   
 $\vdots$   
 $\chi$

Assume  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  is irrational. Choose  $a$  to be  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  and  $b$  to be  $\sqrt{2}$ .  
Then we have

$$a^b = (\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}})^{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}^{(\sqrt{2} \cdot \sqrt{2})} = (\sqrt{2})^2 = 2.$$

As 2 is rational, Theorem  $\chi$  holds under the assumption  $\neg p$ .

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Summary of Proof for  $\chi$ Proposition  $p$  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  is rational.
$$\frac{}{p \vee \neg p} [LEM]$$
 $p \vee \neg p$ 
$$\frac{p}{\vdots \chi}$$
$$\frac{\neg p}{\vdots \chi}$$
 $[\vee e]$  $\chi$ 

There exist irrational numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational...

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- There exist irrational numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational.
- But: If they exist, do you have an example?
- Probably  $a = \sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  and  $b = \sqrt{2}\dots$ , but we haven't proven that  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  is irrational!
- Note:  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}\dots} = 2$
- Using LEM, we can make use of the “probable irrationality” of  $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$  without having to prove it!

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Intuitionistic logic does not accept the derived rule LEM.  
The underlying argument for LEM is elimination of double negation.

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\phi} \quad [\neg\neg e]$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Deriving LEM using Basic Rules



1	$\neg(\phi \vee \neg\phi)$	assumption
2	$\phi$	assumption
3	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\vee i_1$ 2
4	$\perp$	$\neg e$ 3,1
5	$\neg\phi$	$\neg i$ 2–4
6	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\vee i_2$ 5
7	$\perp$	$\neg e$ 6,1
8	$\neg\neg(\phi \vee \neg\phi)$	$\neg i$ 1–7
9	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\neg\neg e$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Intuitionistic Logic

Intuitionistic logic is obtained from natural deduction by removing the rule  $\neg\neg e$ .

## History of Intuitionistic Logic

- Late 19th century: Gottlob Frege proposes to reduce mathematics to set theory.
- Russell destroys this programme via paradox.
- In response, L.E.J. Brouwer proposes *intuitionistic* mathematics, with *intuitionistic logic* as its formal foundation.
- An alternative response is Hilbert's *formalistic* position.

## Applications of Intuitionistic Logic

- Intuitionistic logic has a strong connection to *computability*
- For example, if we have an intuitionistic proof of

## Theorem

There exist irrational numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational.

then we would know irrational  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $a^b$  is rational.



## 1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

## 2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

## 3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

## 4 Semantics of Propositional Logic

## 5 Conjunctive Normal Form

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Recap: Logical Connectives



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

$\neg$ : negation of  $p$  is denoted by  $\neg p$ .

$\vee$ : disjunction of  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \vee r$ , meaning at least one of the two statements is true.

$\wedge$ : conjunction of  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \wedge r$ , meaning both are true.

$\rightarrow$ : implication between  $p$  and  $r$  is denoted by  $p \rightarrow r$ , meaning that  $r$  is a logical consequence of  $p$ .



## Use of Meta-Language

When we describe rules such as \_\_\_\_\_ [LEM]

$$\phi \vee \neg\phi$$

we mean that letters such as  $\phi$  can be replaced by *any* formula.

But what exactly is the set of formulas that can be used for  $\phi$ ?

## Allowed

$$(p \wedge (\neg q))$$

## Not allowed

$$) \wedge p \ q \neg($$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Definition of Well-formed Formulas



## Definition

- Every propositional atom  $p, q, r, \dots$  and  $p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots$  is a well-formed formula.
- If  $\phi$  is a well-formed formula, then so is  $(\neg\phi)$ .
- If  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are well-formed formulas, then so is  $(\phi \wedge \psi)$ .
- If  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are well-formed formulas, then so is  $(\phi \vee \psi)$ .
- If  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  are well-formed formulas, then so is  $(\phi \rightarrow \psi)$ .

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Definition very restrictive

How about this formula?

$$p \wedge \neg q \vee r$$

Usually, this is understood to mean

$$((p \wedge (\neg q)) \vee r)$$

...but for the formal treatment of this section and the first homework, we insist on the strict definition, and exclude such formulas.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Backus Naur Form: A more compact definition

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



## Backus Naur Form for propositional formulas

$$\phi ::= p | (\neg\phi) | (\phi \wedge \phi) | (\phi \vee \phi) | (\phi \rightarrow \phi)$$

where  $p$  stands for any atomic proposition.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Inversion principle

How can we show that a formula such as

$$(((\neg p) \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \wedge (q \vee (\neg r))))$$

is well-formed?

**Answer:** We look for the only applicable rule in the definition (the last rule in this case), and proceed on the parts.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

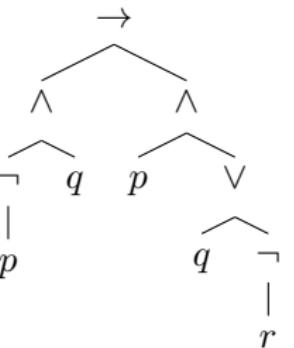


# Parse trees

A formula

$$(((\neg p) \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \wedge (q \vee (\neg r))))$$

...and its parse tree:



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## ① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

## ② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

## ③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

## ④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

## ⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical  
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and  
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Meaning of propositional formula

## Meaning as mathematical object

We define the meaning of formulas as a function that maps formulas and valuations to truth values.

## Approach

We define this mapping based on the structure of the formula, using the meaning of their logical connectives.

## Truth Values

The set of truth values contains two elements T and F, where T represents “**true**” and F represents “**false**”.

## Valuations

A *valuation* or *model* of a formula  $\phi$  is an assignment of each propositional atom in  $\phi$  to a truth value.



The meaning of a connective is defined as a truth table that gives the truth value of a formula, whose root symbol is the connective, based on the truth values of its components.

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \wedge \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Truth tables of formulas

Truth tables use placeholders of formulas such as  $\phi$ :

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \wedge \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

Build the truth table for given formula:

$p$	$q$	$r$	$(p \wedge q)$	$((p \wedge q) \wedge r)$
T	T	T	T	T
T	T	F	T	F
:				

## Truth tables of other connectives

Nguyen An Khuong,  
 Tran Van Hoai,  
 Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
 Lê Hồng Trang



$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \vee \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

$\phi$	$\psi$	$\phi \rightarrow \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

$\phi$	$\neg\phi$
T	F
F	T

$$\frac{}{\top} \quad \frac{}{\perp}$$

- [Contents](#)
- [Introduction](#)
- [Declarative Sentences](#)
- [Natural Deduction](#)
- [Sequents](#)
- [Rules for natural deduction](#)
- [Basic and Derived Rules](#)
- [Intuitionistic Logic](#)
- [Formal Language](#)
- [Semantics](#)
- [Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)
- [Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)
- [Normal Form](#)
- [Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Constructing the truth table of a formula

Nguyen An Khuong,  
 Tran Van Hoai,  
 Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
 Lê Hồng Trang



$p$	$q$	$(\neg p)$	$\neg q$	$p \rightarrow \neg q$	$q \vee \neg p$	$(p \rightarrow \neg q) \rightarrow (q \vee \neg p)$
T	T	F	F	F	T	T
T	F	F	T	T	F	F
F	T	T	F	T	T	T
F	F	T	T	T	T	T

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Validity

A formula is *valid* if it computes T for all its valuations.

## Satisfiability

A formula is *satisfiable* if it computes T for at least one of its valuations.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Semantic Entailment, Soundness and Completeness of Propositional Logic

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



## Semantic Entailment

If, for all valuations in which all  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$  evaluate to T, the formula  $\psi$  evaluates to T as well, we say that  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$  **semantically entail**  $\psi$ , written:

$$\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

## Soundness

Let  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$  and  $\psi$  be propositional formulas. If  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$  valid (has a proof), then  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ .

## Completeness

Let  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$  and  $\psi$  be propositional formulas. If  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ , then  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$  valid (has a proof).

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- 1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences
- 2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction
- 3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language
- 4 Semantics of Propositional Logic
- 5 Conjunctive Normal Form

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Conjunctive Normal Form

## Definition

A literal  $L$  is either an atom  $p$  or the negation of an atom  $\neg p$ . A formula  $C$  is in *conjunctive normal form* (CNF) if it is a conjunction of clauses, where each clause is a disjunction of literals:

$$L ::= p \mid \neg p,$$

$$D ::= L \mid L \vee D,$$

$$C ::= D \mid D \wedge C.$$

## Examples

- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg q \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$  is in CNF.
- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge ((p \wedge \neg q) \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$  is not in CNF.
- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge \neg(\neg q \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$  is not in CNF.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Usefulness of CNF

## Lemma

A disjunction of literals  $L_1 \vee L_2 \vee \dots \vee L_m$  is valid iff there are  $1 \leq i, j \leq m$  such that  $L_i$  is  $\neg L_j$ .

How to disprove

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee r) \wedge q?$$

Disprove any of:

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee r) \quad \models (\neg p \vee r) \quad \models q.$$

How to prove

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r \neg p) \wedge (r \vee \neg r)?$$

Prove all of:

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee q) \quad \models (p \vee r \neg p) \quad \models (r \vee \neg r).$$

# Usefulness of CNF (cont.) and Transformation to CNF

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



## Proposition

Let  $\phi$  be a formula of propositional logic. Then  $\phi$  is satisfiable iff  $\neg\phi$  is not valid.

## Satisfiability test

We can test satisfiability of  $\phi$  by transforming  $\neg\phi$  into CNF, and show that some clause is not valid.

## Theorem-Transformation to CNF

Every formula in the propositional calculus can be transformed into an equivalent formula in CNF.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Algorithm for CNF Transformation

- ① Eliminate implication using:

$$A \rightarrow B \equiv \neg A \vee B.$$

- ② Push all negations inward using De Morgan's laws:

$$\neg(A \wedge B) \equiv (\neg A \vee \neg B),$$

$$\neg(A \vee B) \equiv (\neg A \wedge \neg B).$$

- ③ Eliminate double negations using the equivalence  $\neg\neg A \equiv A$ .
- ④ The formula now consists of disjunctions and conjunctions of literals. Use the distributive laws to eliminate conjunctions within disjunctions:

$$A \vee (B \wedge C) \equiv (A \vee B) \wedge (A \vee C),$$

$$(A \wedge B) \vee C \equiv (A \vee C) \wedge (B \vee C).$$

# Example



$$\begin{aligned}(\neg p \rightarrow \neg q) \rightarrow (p \rightarrow q) &\equiv \neg(\neg\neg p \vee \neg q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg\neg\neg p \wedge q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg p \wedge q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg p \vee \neg p \vee q) \wedge (q \vee \neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv \top.\end{aligned}$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Declarative Sentences](#)[Natural Deduction](#)[Sequents](#)[Rules for natural deduction](#)[Basic and Derived Rules](#)[Intuitionistic Logic](#)[Formal Language](#)[Semantics](#)[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)[Normal Form](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Homeworks

- I. Write down the explanations (in Vietnamese, or in English if possible) of the following terms, find examples for each term, what are the differences between them:
  - 1) fallacy, contradiction, paradox, counterexample;
  - 2) premise, assumption, axiom, hypothesis, conjecture;
  - 3) tautology, valid, contradiction, satisfiable;
  - 4) soundness, completeness;
  - 5) sequent, consequence, implication, (semantic) entailment;
  - 6) argument, variable, arity;
- II. What are the differences between the following notations: ' $\rightarrow$ ', ' $\Rightarrow$ ', ' $\vdash$ ', ' $\models$ '? And what are the differences between the following notations: ' $\longleftrightarrow$ ', ' $\iff$ ', ' $\dashv$ ', ' $\equiv$ ', '='? Find examples to illustrate these differences.
- III. It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:
  - 1.1: 2d), 2g);
  - 1.2: 1d), 1g), 1m), 1q), 1u), 1w), 3a), 3b), 3c), 3f), 3g), 3l), 3o);
  - 1.4: 12d);
  - 1.5: 3b), 3c), 7c).

# Next Week?

Propositional Logic  
Review I

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Tran Van Hoai,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Lê Hồng Trang



- Exercises Session;
- [2, Section 1.6]: SAT Solvers;
- Application of SAT Solving.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Chapter 1b

## Propositional Logic Review II

(SAT Solving and Application)

*Mathematics Modeling*

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 1** in:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006"

and some other sources)

**Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai**

*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Contents

## 1 Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

Intermezzo: Classification of problems according to their difficulty

## 2 2-SAT is in $P$

An example

An Efficient Algorithm based on Unit Clause Propagation

Graphical View of 2-SAT

## 3 SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## 1 Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

Intermezzo: Classification of problems according to their difficulty

## 2 2-SAT is in $P$

## 3 SAT Solvers

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal;



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal; and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal;



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal; and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal; and
- If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned;

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal; and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal; and
- If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned; and
- The unicorn is magical if it is horned.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal; and
  - If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal; and
  - If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned; and
  - The unicorn is magical if it is horned.
- 
- **Q:** Is the unicorn mythical? Is it magical? Is it horned?

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



## Contents

### Introduction

#### Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

#### 2-SAT is in $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

### SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Quick review](#)

[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in P](#)

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis
  - The domain of propositional variables is  $\{0, 1\}$ .

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Quick review](#)

[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in P](#)

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis
  - The domain of propositional variables is  $\{0, 1\}$ .
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis
  - The domain of propositional variables is  $\{0, 1\}$ .
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .
- A formula  $\phi$  in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis
  - The domain of propositional variables is  $\{0, 1\}$ .
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .
- A formula  $\phi$  in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = (\neg p_1 \vee p_2) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- Boolean formula  $\phi$  is defined over a set of propositional variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$ , using the standard propositional connectives  $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \rightarrow, \leftrightarrow$ , and parenthesis
  - The domain of propositional variables is  $\{0, 1\}$ .
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .
- A formula  $\phi$  in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.
  - Example:  $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = (\neg p_1 \vee p_2) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$ .

### Proposition (see [2, Subsection 1.5.1])

There is an algorithm to translate *any* Boolean formula into CNF.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proposition (see [2, Subsection 1.5.1])

There is an algorithm to translate *any* Boolean formula into CNF.

## Proposition 1.45, p. 57

$\phi$ -satisfiable iff  $\neg\phi$ -not tautology.

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



## Contents

### Introduction

Quick review

### Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

### 2-SAT is in $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

### SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Problem



### Contents

#### Introduction

Quick review

#### Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

#### 2-SAT is in $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

#### SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

#### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.

## Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.

## Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.



## Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.



## Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.
- More-than-35-year old conjecture:

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Problem

Find an assignment to the variables  $p_1, \dots, p_n$  such that  $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$ , or prove that no such assignment exists.

## Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.
- More-than-35-year old conjecture:  
*“Any algorithm that solves SAT is exponential in the number of variables, in the worst-case.”*

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

Propositional Logic  
Review II

- Denote

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

Propositional Logic  
Review II

- Denote

- $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
  - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
  - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in  \$P\$](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote

- $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
- $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
- $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness



- Denote
  - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
  - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
  - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
  - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
  - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
  - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**  
 $X \leq_P Y :$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in  \$P\$](#) [An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote

- $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
- $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
- $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**  
 $X \leq_P Y$ :

A problem  $X$  is polynomial time reducible to a problem  $Y$  ( $X \leq_P Y$ ) if we can solve  $X$  in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for  $Y$  (and the instance of problem  $Y$  we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem  $X$ ).

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
  - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
  - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
  - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**

$$X \leq_P Y :$$

A problem  $X$  is polynomial time reducible to a problem  $Y$  ( $X \leq_P Y$ ) if we can solve  $X$  in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for  $Y$  (and the instance of problem  $Y$  we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem  $X$ ).

- The class of **NP-complete** problems  $NPC$ : A problem  $Y$  is in  $NPC$  if

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote

- $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
- $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
- $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**  
 $X \leq_P Y$ :

A problem  $X$  is polynomial time reducible to a problem  $Y$  ( $X \leq_P Y$ ) if we can solve  $X$  in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for  $Y$  (and the instance of problem  $Y$  we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem  $X$ ).

- The class of **NP-complete** problems  $NPC$ : A problem  $Y$  is in  $NPC$  if
  - a)  $Y \in NP$ , and

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote

- $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
- $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
- $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can be verified in polynomial time}\}$

- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if  $P = NP$  or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**  
 $X \leq_P Y :$

A problem  $X$  is polynomial time reducible to a problem  $Y$  ( $X \leq_P Y$ ) if we can solve  $X$  in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for  $Y$  (and the instance of problem  $Y$  we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem  $X$ ).

- The class of **NP-complete** problems  $NPC$ : A problem  $Y$  is in  $NPC$  if
  - $Y \in NP$ , and
  - $X \leq_P Y$  for all  $X \in NP$ .



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Quick review](#)

[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in P](#)

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# P=NP question

- The problems in *NPC* are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.



## Contents

### Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

### P and NP

### 2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

### SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# P=NP question

- The problems in  $NPC$  are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.
- If one problem  $Y \in NPC$  is in  $P$  then  $P = NP$ .



## P=NP question

- The problems in  $NPC$  are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.
- If one problem  $Y \in NPC$  is in  $P$  then  $P = NP$ .
- If one problem  $Y \in NP$  is not in  $P$  then  $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$ .

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## P=NP question

- The problems in  $NPC$  are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.
- If one problem  $Y \in NPC$  is in  $P$  then  $P = NP$ .
- If one problem  $Y \in NP$  is not in  $P$  then  $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$ .
- By now a lot of problems have been proved  $NP$ -complete

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in  \$P\$](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

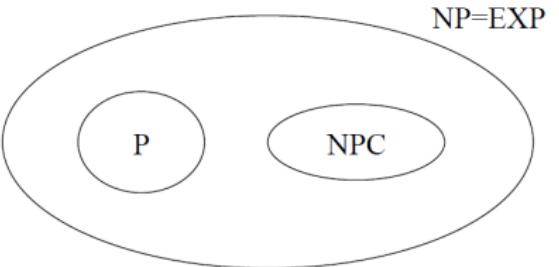
A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## P=NP question

- The problems in  $NPC$  are the hardest problems in  $NP$  and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.
- If one problem  $Y \in NPC$  is in  $P$  then  $P = NP$ .
- If one problem  $Y \in NP$  is not in  $P$  then  $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$ .
- By now a lot of problems have been proved  $NP$ -complete
- We think the world looks like this—but we really do not know:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

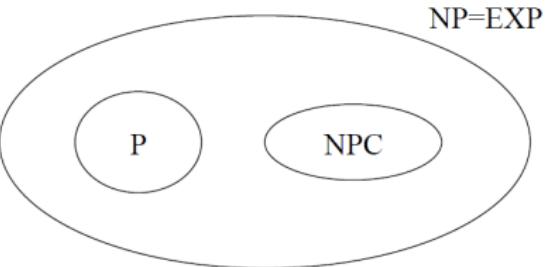
A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## P=NP question

- The problems in  $NPC$  are the hardest problems in  $NP$  and the key to resolving the  $P = NP$  question.
- If one problem  $Y \in NPC$  is in  $P$  then  $P = NP$ .
- If one problem  $Y \in NP$  is not in  $P$  then  $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$ .
- By now a lot of problems have been proved  $NP$ -complete
- We think the world looks like this—but we really do not know:



- If someone found a polynomial time solution to a problem in  $NPC$  our world would “collapse” and a lot of smart people have tried really hard to solve  $NPC$  problems efficiently



We regard  $Y \in NPC$  a strong evidence for  $Y$  being hard!



## Contents

### Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

### P and NP

#### 2-SAT is in $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

### SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 ' literals'

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
  - Example:  $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
  - Example:  $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in  $NPC$ , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
  - Example:  $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in  $NPC$ , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
  - Example:  $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in  $NPC$ , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.
  - $3SAT \in NP$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem  $NP$ -complete using another  $NP$ -complete problem.

**Lemma:** If  $Y \in NP$  and  $X \leq_P Y$  for some  $X \in NPC$  then  $Y \in NPC$

**Proof:** To prove  $Y \in NPC$  we just need to prove  $Y \in NP$  (often easy) and reduce problem in  $NPC$  to  $Y$  (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in  $NPC$  is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
  - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
  - Example:  $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in  $NPC$ , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.
  - $3SAT \in NP$
  - $SAT \leq_P 3SAT$  (we can show that transforming general formula into 3-CNF is in polynomial time.)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

**2-SAT is in P**

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

**SAT Solvers**

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

**2-SAT is in P**

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

**SAT Solvers**

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

**Homeworks and Next Week Plan?**



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try  $x_1 = 1$ :

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try  $x_1 = 1$ :

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set  $x_2 = 1$ :

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try  $x_1 = 1$ :

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set  $x_2 = 1$ :

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set  $x_3 = 1$ :

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set  $x_1 = 0$ . Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value “Truth”.

- We are now *forced* to assign  $x_2 = 1$  (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where  $\emptyset$  is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try  $x_1 = 1$ :

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set  $x_2 = 1$ :

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set  $x_3 = 1$ :

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

(0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )
    - Unassign variables from step (a).

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )
    - Unassign variables from step (a).
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 0$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )
    - Unassign variables from step (a).
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 0$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )
    - Unassign variables from step (a).
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 0$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Algorithm( $\phi$ )

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$  as follows.

### Algorithm( $\phi$ )

- (0) Initialize empty assignment  $\sigma = *^n$ .
- (1) If all variables are assigned return  $\sigma$ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable  $x_i$ .
  - (a) (Try  $x_i = 1$ )
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 1$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
  - (b) (Try  $x_i = 0$ )
    - Unassign variables from step (a).
    - Set  $\sigma_i = 0$ ,  $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$ .
    - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$ .
    - If  $\phi'$  does not contain  $\emptyset$  goto (1).
- (3) Halt with "UNSAT".

# Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

Propositional Logic  
Review II

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

## Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

### Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

- While  $\exists$  unit clause  $\ell_i$ :

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

### Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

- While  $\exists$  unit clause  $\ell_i$ :
  - Update  $\sigma$ : if  $\ell_i = x_i$  set  $\sigma_i = 1$ , else  $(\ell_i = \bar{x}_i)$  set  $\sigma_i = 0$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

### Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

- While  $\exists$  unit clause  $\ell_i$ :
  - Update  $\sigma$ : if  $\ell_i = x_i$  set  $\sigma_i = 1$ , else  $(\ell_i = \bar{x}_i)$  set  $\sigma_i = 0$ .
  - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

### Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

- While  $\exists$  unit clause  $\ell_i$ :
  - Update  $\sigma$ : if  $\ell_i = x_i$  set  $\sigma_i = 1$ , else  $(\ell_i = \bar{x}_i)$  set  $\sigma_i = 0$ .
  - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

### Simplify( $\phi, \ell_i$ )

- $\forall$  clause  $C \in \phi$ :
  - If  $\ell_i \in C$ , remove  $C$ .
  - If  $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$ ,  $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$ .
  - Otherwise, copy  $C$  as is.
- Output the modified formula.

### Unit Clause Propagation( $\phi$ )

- While  $\exists$  unit clause  $\ell_i$ :
  - Update  $\sigma$ : if  $\ell_i = x_i$  set  $\sigma_i = 1$ , else ( $\ell_i = \bar{x}_i$ ) set  $\sigma_i = 0$ .
  - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$ .

**Complexity:** Let  $n$  denote the number of variables and let  $m$  denote the number of clauses. It is not hard to verify that there are at most  $n$  outer iterations and that each call to UCP takes at most  $O(m)$  time, therefore the running time of Algorithm is  $O(m \cdot n)$ . (HW: Find an implementation in  $O(n + m)$  complexity.)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment  $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$  violate a clause  $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$  if:  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  are assigned (i.e.,  $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$ ) and  $\sigma_i$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_j$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment  $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$  violate a clause  $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$  if:  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  are assigned (i.e.,  $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$ ) and  $\sigma_i$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_j$ . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment  $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$  violate a clause  $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$  if:  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  are assigned (i.e.,  $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$ ) and  $\sigma_i$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_j$ . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

## Lemma

At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment  $\sigma^{(i)}$  does not violate any of the clauses of  $C$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

*If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .*

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment  $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$  violate a clause  $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$  if:  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  are assigned (i.e.,  $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$ ) and  $\sigma_i$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_j$ . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

## Lemma

*At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment  $\sigma^{(i)}$  does not violate any of the clauses of  $C$ .*

## Chứng minh.

Invariance 2 By induction on  $i$ . The basis is trivial as in the first iteration  $\sigma = *^n$  and so none of the clauses are violated.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment  $\sigma$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\phi$ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment  $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$  violate a clause  $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$  if:  $\sigma_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  are assigned (i.e.,  $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$ ) and  $\sigma_i$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_i$  and  $\sigma_j$  doesn't satisfy  $\ell_j$ . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

## Lemma

At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment  $\sigma^{(i)}$  does not violate any of the clauses of  $C$ .

## Chứng minh.

Invariance 2 By induction on  $i$ . The basis is trivial as in the first iteration  $\sigma = *^n$  and so none of the clauses are violated. Step: we'll prove that none of the clauses  $C$  are violated by  $\sigma^{(i+1)}$ . If both variables of  $C$  were assigned before the last iteration, then, by the induction hypothesis,  $\sigma^{(i)}$  doesn't violate  $C$ , and therefore, so is  $\sigma^{(i+1)}$ . If both variables of  $C$  were assigned in the last iteration, then  $C$  must be satisfied by  $\sigma^{(i+1)}$ , otherwise, the algorithm finds a contradiction.





Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.





Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.
- Let  $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$  and  $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$ . It suffices to show that both  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$  are unsatisfiable.



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)  
P and NP[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.
- Let  $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$  and  $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$ . It suffices to show that both  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$  are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula UCP( $\phi_0$ ) and the formula UCP( $\phi_1$ ) contain a contradiction.



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

[UNSAT](#)

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.
- Let  $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$  and  $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$ . It suffices to show that both  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$  are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula UCP( $\phi_0$ ) and the formula UCP( $\phi_1$ ) contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if UCP( $\psi$ ) contains a contradiction, then  $\psi$  is UNSAT.



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.
- Let  $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$  and  $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$ . It suffices to show that both  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$  are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula UCP( $\phi_0$ ) and the formula UCP( $\phi_1$ ) contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if UCP( $\psi$ ) contains a contradiction, then  $\psi$  is UNSAT.



[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

## Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then  $\phi$  is unsatisfiable.

## Chứng minh.

- Let  $\phi'$  be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let  $x_i$  be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that  $\phi'$  is a 2-CNF formula and  $\phi' \subseteq \phi$  (i.e., all the clauses of  $\phi'$  appear as clauses in  $\phi$ ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that  $\phi'$  is unsatisfiable.
- Let  $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$  and  $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$ . It suffices to show that both  $\phi_0$  and  $\phi_1$  are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula UCP( $\phi_0$ ) and the formula UCP( $\phi_1$ ) contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if UCP( $\psi$ ) contains a contradiction, then  $\psi$  is UNSAT.



Therefore we have an efficient algorithm for SAT of 2-CNF.



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

Main property: Let  $\sigma$  be a satisfying assignment.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

Main property: Let  $\sigma$  be a satisfying assignment.

If  $\sigma$  satisfies a node  $v$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies all nodes  $u$  achievable from  $v$ .

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

Main property: Let  $\sigma$  be a satisfying assignment.

If  $\sigma$  satisfies a node  $v$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies all nodes  $u$  achievable from  $v$ .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

Main property: Let  $\sigma$  be a satisfying assignment.

If  $\sigma$  satisfies a node  $v$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies all nodes  $u$  achievable from  $v$ .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula  $\phi$ , define the implication graph  $G = G_\phi$  as follows:
  - nodes  $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
  - for a clause  $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$  define the edges:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\ell}_i &\rightarrow \ell_j \\ \bar{\ell}_j &\rightarrow \ell_i\end{aligned}$$

Main property: Let  $\sigma$  be a satisfying assignment.

If  $\sigma$  satisfies a node  $v$ , then  $\sigma$  satisfies all nodes  $u$  achievable from  $v$ .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.

### Theorem

$\phi$  is satisfiable iff the graph  $G$  does not contain a “contradiction path” of the form:

$$\ell_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \ell_i.$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ .  
Contradiction.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ .  
Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ .  
Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

(a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ .  
Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ .  
Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ .  
Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ . Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ . Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if  $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$  is an edge, then  $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$  is also an edge.

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)  
P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ . Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ . Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if  $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$  is an edge, then  $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$  is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)  
[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ . Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ . Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if  $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$  is an edge, then  $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$  is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

- (a)  $\Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)  
[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ . Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ . Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if  $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$  is an edge, then  $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$  is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

- (a)  $\Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$
- (b)  $\Rightarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow x_i$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)  
[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

## Proof for the previous theorem

① ( $\exists$  contradiction path  $\Rightarrow \phi$  is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment  $\sigma$ .
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\ell_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\bar{\ell}_i$ . Contradiction.
- If  $\sigma$  satisfies  $\bar{\ell}_i$ , then by Property it must satisfy  $\ell_i$ . Contradiction.

② ( $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow \exists$  contradiction path):

If  $\phi$  is UNSAT  $\Rightarrow$  Algorithm Halts.

$\Rightarrow$  for some  $x_i$  we have:

- (a)  $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b)  $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if  $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$  is an edge, then  $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$  is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

- (a)  $\Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$
- (b)  $\Rightarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow x_i$

Therefore, there exists a contradiction path.



## 1 Introduction

## 2 2-SAT is in $P$

## 3 SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

Propositional Logic  
Review II

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
  - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
  - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
  - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
  - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
  - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:
    - picking a random variable, and

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

## WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
  - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
  - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:
    - picking a random variable, and
    - picking a variable that when flipped minimizes the number of unsatisfied clauses.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



- Simplify formula based on

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

[DPLL: Idea](#)

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and unit propagation

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

**DPLL: Idea**

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and unit propagation
- If not done, pick an atom  $p$  and split:  $\phi \wedge p$  or  $\phi \wedge \neg p$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Linear Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in  \$P\$](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

[A Linear Solver](#)

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Linear Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

[A Linear Solver](#)

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Linear Solver: Idea



- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

[A Linear Solver](#)

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Linear Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.
- Propagate constraints using obvious rules.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

[A Linear Solver](#)

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Linear Solver: Idea



- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.
- Propagate constraints using obvious rules.
- If all leaves are marked, check that corresponding assignment makes the formula true.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

[A Linear Solver](#)

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Transformation

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

$$T(p) = p$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Transformation

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2)\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



$$\begin{aligned} T(p) &= p \\ T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\ T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T) \end{aligned}$$

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Transformation

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$

## Example

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Transformation

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$

## Example

$$\phi = p \wedge \neg(q \vee \neg p)$$

[Contents](#)[Introduction](#)[Quick review](#)[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)[P and NP](#)[2-SAT is in P](#)[An example](#)[UNSAT](#)[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)[SAT Solvers](#)[WalkSAT: Idea](#)[DPLL: Idea](#)[A Linear Solver](#)[A Cubic Solver](#)[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Transformation

$$T(p) = p$$

$$T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) = T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2)$$

$$T(\neg\phi) = \neg\phi(T)$$

$$T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) = \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))$$

$$T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) = \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))$$

## Example

$$\phi = p \wedge \neg(q \vee \neg p)$$

$$T(\phi) = p \wedge \neg\neg(\neg q \wedge \neg\neg p)$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Quick review](#)

[Boolean Satisfiability \(SAT\)](#)

[P and NP](#)

[2-SAT is in P](#)

[An example](#)

[UNSAT](#)

[Graphical View of 2-SAT](#)

[SAT Solvers](#)

[WalkSAT: Idea](#)

[DPLL: Idea](#)

[A Linear Solver](#)

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Binary Decision Tree: Example

See Example 1.48 and Figure 1.12 on page 70.

# Problem



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in  $P$

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

What happens to formulas of the kind  $\neg(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2)$ ?

# A Cubic Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

Improve the linear solver as follows:



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Cubic Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Cubic Solver: Idea

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node  $n$  that is still unmarked:

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in  \$P\$](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Cubic Solver: Idea

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node  $n$  that is still unmarked:
  - Mark  $n$  with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Cubic Solver: Idea



Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node  $n$  that is still unmarked:
  - Mark  $n$  with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
  - Mark  $n$  with F and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# A Cubic Solver: Idea



Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node  $n$  that is still unmarked:
  - Mark  $n$  with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
  - Mark  $n$  with F and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
  - Combine temporary marks, resulting in possibly new permanent marks

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that  $\phi$  is in CNF.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)  
P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that  $\phi$  is in CNF.
- $\phi$  can be altered so that it contains exactly 3 literals per clause (can be fed to 3-SAT solver).

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)  
P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)



# An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that  $\phi$  is in CNF.
- $\phi$  can be altered so that it contains exactly 3 literals per clause (can be fed to 3-SAT solver).
- Problem: Solve this 3-SAT problem with a suitable solver?

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)  
P and NP

[2-SAT is in P](#)

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

[SAT Solvers](#)

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

[A Cubic Solver](#)

[Homeworks and Next Week Plan?](#)

# Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai

## Homeworks

- Read carefully all proofs in this note.
- Try to solve the Sudoku in the Introduction note
- Show that  $kSAT \in NPC$  for all  $k \geq 3$ .
- Do ALL marked questions of Exercises 1.6 in [2].
- Read carefully Subsections 1.6.1 and 1.6.2 in [2].



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Propositional Logic  
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Le Hong Trang,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,  
Tran Van Hoai



## Homeworks

- Read carefully all proofs in this note.
- Try to solve the Sudoku in the Introduction note
- Show that  $kSAT \in NPC$  for all  $k \geq 3$ .
- Do ALL marked questions of Exercises 1.6 in [2].
- Read carefully Subsections 1.6.1 and 1.6.2 in [2].

## Next Week?

Predicate Logic

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Chapter 1c

## Advanced Predicate Logic

*Discrete Mathematics II*

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.")

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

**Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen**  
*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Contents

## ① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

- Need for Richer Language
- Predicate Logic as Formal Language
- Proof Theory of Predicate Logic
- Quantifier Equivalences

## ② Semantics of Predicate Logic

## ③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

## ④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## ⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# 1 Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

# 2 Semantics of Predicate Logic

# 3 Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

# 4 Undecidability of Predicate Logic

# 5 Compactness of Predicate Calculus

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.

- *But:* How about statements with “*there exists...*” or “*every...*” or “*among...*”?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# What is needed?

## Example

*Every student is younger than some instructor.*



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# What is needed?

## Example

*Every student is younger than some instructor.*

What is this statement about?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# What is needed?

## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.

We express them in predicate logic using *predicates*.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

- $S(An)$  could denote that An is a student.
- $I(Binh)$  could denote that Binh is an instructor.
- $Y(An, Binh)$  could denote that An is younger than Binh.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Example

*Every student is younger than some instructor.*

We use the predicate  $S$  to denote student-hood.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Example

*Every student is younger than some instructor.*

We use the predicate  $S$  to denote student-hood.  
How do we express “*every student*”?

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Example

*Every student is younger than some instructor.*

We use the predicate  $S$  to denote student-hood.

How do we express “*every student*”?

We need *variables* that can stand for constant values, and a *quantifier* symbol that denotes “*every*”.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

Using variables and quantifiers, we can write:

$$\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow (\exists y(I(y) \wedge Y(x, y)))).$$

Literally: For every  $x$ , if  $x$  is a student, then there is some  $y$  such that  $y$  is an instructor and  $x$  is younger than  $y$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## English

Not all birds can fly.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Another Example

### English

Not all birds can fly.

### Predicates

$B(x)$ :  $x$  is a bird

$F(x)$ :  $x$  can fly

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## English

Not all birds can fly.

## Predicates

$B(x)$ :  $x$  is a bird

$F(x)$ :  $x$  can fly

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\neg(\forall x(B(x) \rightarrow F(x)))$$

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# A Third Example

## English

Every girl is younger than her mother.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## A Third Example

### English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

### Predicates

$G(x)$ :  $x$  is a girl

$M(x, y)$ :  $y$  is  $x$ 's mother

$Y(x, y)$ :  $x$  is younger than  $y$

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

## Predicates

$G(x)$ :  $x$  is a girl

$M(x, y)$ :  $y$  is  $x$ 's mother

$Y(x, y)$ :  $x$  is younger than  $y$

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# A “Mother” Function

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that  $y$  is only introduced to denote the mother of  $x$ .



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that  $y$  is only introduced to denote the mother of  $x$ .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate  $M(x, y)$  is a function, when read from right to left.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that  $y$  is only introduced to denote the mother of  $x$ .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate  $M(x, y)$  is a function, when read from right to left.

We introduce a function symbol  $m$  that can be applied to variables and constants as in

$$\forall x (G(x) \rightarrow Y(x, m(x)))$$

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# A Drastic Example

## English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# A Drastic Example

## English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

## The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(An, y) \wedge M(v, u) \wedge M(Binh, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# A Drastic Example

## English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

## The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(An, y) \wedge M(v, u) \wedge M(Binh, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$

## The same sentence in predicate logic with functions

$$m(m(An)) = m(m(Binh))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

**Syntax:** We formalize the language of predicate logic,  
including scoping and substitution.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

**Syntax:** We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.

**Proof theory:** We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic

**Semantics:** We describe models in which predicates, functions, and formulas have meaning.

**Further topics:** Soundness/completeness (beyond scope of module), undecidability, incompleteness results, compactness results, extensions



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# ① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

# ② Semantics of Predicate Logic

# ③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

# ④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

# ⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus



At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols  $\mathcal{P}$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols  $\mathcal{P}$
- a set of function symbols  $\mathcal{F}$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Predicate Vocabulary

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols  $\mathcal{P}$
- a set of function symbols  $\mathcal{F}$
- a set of constant symbols  $\mathcal{C}$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Every function symbol in  $\mathcal{F}$  and predicate symbol in  $\mathcal{P}$  comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Every function symbol in  $\mathcal{F}$  and predicate symbol in  $\mathcal{P}$  comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.

## Special case

Function symbols with arity 0 are called *constants*.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Terms



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- $x$  ranges over a given set of variables **var**,

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- $x$  ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- $c$  ranges over nullary function symbols in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- $x$  ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- $c$  ranges over nullary function symbols in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and
- $f$  ranges over function symbols in  $\mathcal{F}$  with arity  $n > 0$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



If  $n$  is nullary,  $f$  is unary, and  $g$  is binary, then examples of terms are:

- $g(f(n), n)$
- $f(g(n, f(n)))$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## More Examples of Terms

If  $0, 1, \dots$  are nullary,  $s$  is unary, and  $+, -$  and  $*$  are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## More Examples of Terms

If  $0, 1, \dots$  are nullary,  $s$  is unary, and  $+, -$  and  $*$  are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.

Occasionally, we allow ourselves to use infix notation for function symbols as in

$$(2 - (s(x) + y)) * x$$



$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid$   
 $(\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?


$$\begin{aligned}\phi ::= & P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ & (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)\end{aligned}$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$  is a predicate symbol of arity  $n \geq 1$ ,

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



$$\begin{aligned}\phi ::= & P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ & (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)\end{aligned}$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$  is a predicate symbol of arity  $n \geq 1$ ,
- $t_i$  are terms over  $\mathcal{F}$  and

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



$$\begin{aligned}\phi ::= & P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ & (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)\end{aligned}$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$  is a predicate symbol of arity  $n \geq 1$ ,
- $t_i$  are terms over  $\mathcal{F}$  and
- $x$  is a variable.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Just like for propositional logic, we introduce convenient conventions to reduce the number of parentheses:

- $\neg$ ,  $\forall x$  and  $\exists x$  bind most tightly;
- then  $\wedge$  and  $\vee$ ;
- then  $\rightarrow$ , which is right-associative.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

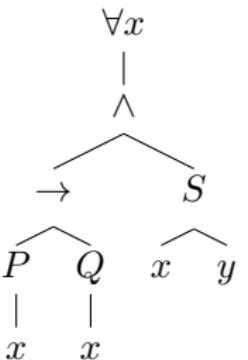
Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

has parse tree



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

### Predicates

$S(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a son of  $y$

$B(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a brother of  $y$

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

## Predicates

$S(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a son of  $y$

$B(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a brother of  $y$

## Functions

$m$ : constant for “me”

$f(x)$ : father of  $x$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

## Predicates

$S(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a son of  $y$

$B(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a brother of  $y$

## Functions

$m$ : constant for “me”

$f(x)$ : father of  $x$

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

## Predicates

$S(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a son of  $y$

$B(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a brother of  $y$

## Functions

$m$ : constant for “me”

$f(x)$ : father of  $x$

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$

Does this formula hold?

# Equality as Predicate

Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



# Equality as Predicate

Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$

## Example

Instead of the formula

$$= (f(x), g(x))$$

we usually write the formula

$$f(x) = g(x)$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder”  $x$  and occurrences of  $x$ ?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

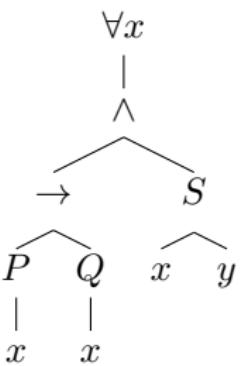
Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder”  $x$  and occurrences of  $x$ ?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

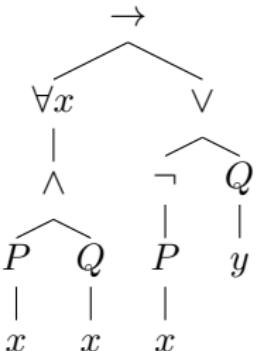
Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Substitution

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



# Substitution

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

## Definition

Given a variable  $x$ , a term  $t$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we define  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$  to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable  $x$  in  $\phi$  with  $t$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Substitution

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

## Definition

Given a variable  $x$ , a term  $t$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we define  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$  to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable  $x$  in  $\phi$  with  $t$ .

## Example

$$\begin{aligned}[x \Rightarrow f(x, y)](\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) &\rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)) \\&= \forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y))\end{aligned}$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

the textbook uses the notation

$$\phi[t/x]$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

the textbook uses the notation

$$\phi[t/x]$$

(we find the order of arguments in the latter notation hard to remember)

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Example as Parse Tree

$$[x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)))$$
$$= (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y))$$


## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

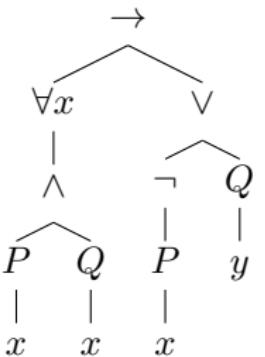
Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Example as Parse Tree

$$[x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)))$$

$$= (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y))$$


### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

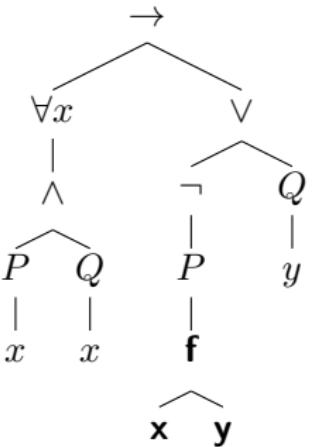
Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

## Problem

$t$  contains variable  $y$  and  $x$  occurs under the scope of  $\forall y$  in  $\phi$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

## Problem

$t$  contains variable  $y$  and  $x$  occurs under the scope of  $\forall y$  in  $\phi$

## Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

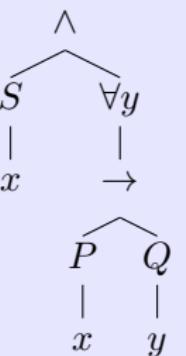
# Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

## Problem

$t$  contains variable  $y$  and  $x$  occurs under the scope of  $\forall y$  in  $\phi$

## Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$





## Definition

Given a term  $t$ , a variable  $x$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we say that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$  if no free  $x$  leaf in  $\phi$  occurs in the scope of  $\forall y$  or  $\exists y$  for any variable  $y$  occurring in  $t$ .

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Avoiding Capturing

## Definition

Given a term  $t$ , a variable  $x$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we say that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$  if no free  $x$  leaf in  $\phi$  occurs in the scope of  $\forall y$  or  $\exists y$  for any variable  $y$  occurring in  $t$ .

## Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ , we demand that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Avoiding Capturing

## Definition

Given a term  $t$ , a variable  $x$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we say that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$  if no free  $x$  leaf in  $\phi$  occurs in the scope of  $\forall y$  or  $\exists y$  for any variable  $y$  occurring in  $t$ .

## Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ , we demand that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$ .

## What if not?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Avoiding Capturing

## Definition

Given a term  $t$ , a variable  $x$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we say that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$  if no free  $x$  leaf in  $\phi$  occurs in the scope of  $\forall y$  or  $\exists y$  for any variable  $y$  occurring in  $t$ .

## Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ , we demand that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$ .

## What if not?

Rename the bound variable!

# Example of Renaming

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Example of Renaming



# Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Example of Renaming


$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$


## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



# Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$


$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$


$$S(f(y, y)) \wedge \forall z(P(f(y, y)) \rightarrow Q(z))$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## 1 Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## 2 Semantics of Predicate Logic

## 3 Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

## 4 Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## 5 Compactness of Predicate Calculus

## Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.

## Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.



## Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.

## Example

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Built-in Rules for Equality



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$



# Properties of Equality

We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Properties of Equality

We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$

- |   |                     |             |
|---|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 | $f(x) = g(x)$       | premise     |
| 2 | $h(f(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= i$       |
| 3 | $h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= e \ 1,2$ |

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Rules for Universal Quantification

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Contents

$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi}$$

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[ \forall x \ e ]} \\ [x \Rightarrow t] \phi$$

We prove:  $F(m(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(m(Duong))$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Example



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[ \forall x \ e ]} \\ [x \Rightarrow t] \phi$$

We prove:  $F(m(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(m(Duong))$

- |   |  |                       |
|---|--|-----------------------|
| 1 | $F(m(Duong))$                              | premise               |
| 2 | $\forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x))$    | premise               |
| 3 | $F(m(Duong)) \rightarrow \neg M(m(Duong))$ | $\forall x \ e \ 2$   |
| 4 | $\neg M(m(Duong))$                         | $\rightarrow e \ 3,1$ |

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Rules for Universal Quantification

If we manage to establish a formula  $\phi$  about a fresh variable  $x_0$ , we can assume  $\forall x\phi$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



If we manage to establish a formula  $\phi$  about a fresh variable  $x_0$ , we can assume  $\forall x \phi$ .

$$\frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} x_0 \\ \vdots \\ [x \Rightarrow x_0] \phi \end{array}}}{\forall x \ i}$$

 $\forall x \phi$ 

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

$x_0$   
⋮  
 $[x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi$

## Example

$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \forall xP(x) \vdash \forall xQ(x)$  via

$\forall x\phi$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

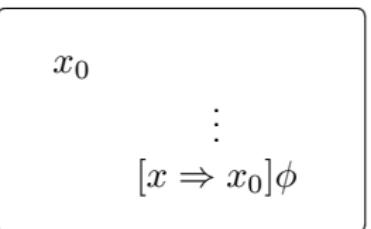
Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Example



$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \forall xP(x) \vdash \forall xQ(x)$  via

$\forall x\phi$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\forall xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \ e \ 1$
4	$P(x_0)$	$\forall x \ e \ 2$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow e \ 3,4$
6	$\forall xQ(x)$	$\forall x \ i \ 3-5$



$$\frac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \ i} \quad \exists x \phi$$

**Contents**

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

**Proof Theory of Predicate Logic**

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

**Rules for Existential Quantification**

# Rules for Existential Quantification

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



$$\frac{\frac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \ i]}{\exists x \phi}$$
$$\frac{\exists x \phi}{\frac{x_0 \quad [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \quad \vdots \quad \chi}{[\exists e] \chi}}$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Example

$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \exists xP(x) \vdash \exists xQ(x)$$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\exists xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0)$	assumption
4	$P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \ e \ 1$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow e \ 4,3$
6	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ i \ 5$
7	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ e \ 2,3-6$

# Examples of Quantifier Equivalences

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

## Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\neg \forall x \phi \dashv \vdash \exists x \neg \phi$$

$$\neg \exists x \phi \dashv \vdash \forall x \neg \phi$$

$$\exists x \exists y \phi \dashv \vdash \exists y \exists x \phi$$

Assume  $x$  is not free in  $\psi$ :

$$\forall x \phi \wedge \psi \dashv \vdash \forall x (\phi \wedge \psi)$$

$$\exists x (\psi \rightarrow \phi) \dashv \vdash \psi \rightarrow \exists x \phi$$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## ① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

## ② Semantics of Predicate Logic

## ③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

## ④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## ⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus



## Definition

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  contain function symbols and  $\mathcal{P}$  contain predicate symbols.  
A model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  consists of:

- ① A non-empty set  $A$ , the *universe*;
- ② for each nullary function symbol  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  a concrete element  $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$ ;
- ③ for each  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a concrete function  $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$ ;
- ④ for each  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a set  $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Example

Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{e, \cdot\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Example (continued)

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^M = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^M s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^M s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

Some Elements of  $A$ 

- 10001
- $\epsilon$
- $1010 \cdot^M 1100$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Example (continued)

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^M = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^M s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^M s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

Some Elements of  $A$ 

- 10001
- $\epsilon$
- $1010 \cdot^M 1100 = 10101100$
- $\epsilon$
- $000 \cdot^M \epsilon$



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Example (continued)

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^M = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^M s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^M s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

Some Elements of  $A$ 

- 10001
- $\epsilon$
- $1010 \cdot^M 1100 = 10101100$
- $\epsilon$
- $000 \cdot^M \epsilon = 000$



## Interpretation of equality

Usually, we require that the equality predicate  $=$  is interpreted as same-ness.

## Extensionality restriction

This means that allowable models are restricted to those in which  $a =^M b$  holds if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  are the same elements of the model's universe.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Example (continued)

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

Equality in  $\mathcal{M}$ 

- $000 =^{\mathcal{M}} 000$
- $001 \neq^{\mathcal{M}} 100$



Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

## Contents

### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Another Example

Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of natural numbers;



Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let  $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$ ;

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let  $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$ ;
- ③ let  $s^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s(n) = n + 1$ ; and

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

## Another Example

Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let  $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$ ;
- ③ let  $s^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s(n) = n + 1$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $n_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} n_2$  iff the natural number  $n_1$  is less than or equal to  $n_2$ .

# How To Handle Free Variables?

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# How To Handle Free Variables?

## Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$

## Environment extension

We define environment extension such that  $l[x \mapsto a]$  is the environment that maps  $x$  to  $a$  and any other variable  $y$  to  $l(y)$ .



## Contents

### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



The model  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies  $\phi$  with respect to environment  $l$ , written  
 $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ :

- in case  $\phi$  is of the form  $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$ , if the result  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  of evaluating  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n$  with respect to  $l$  is in  $P^{\mathcal{M}}$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\forall x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for all  $a \in A$ ;

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
 Motivation, Syntax,  
 Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Satisfaction Relation

The model  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies  $\phi$  with respect to environment  $l$ , written  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ :

- in case  $\phi$  is of the form  $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$ , if the result  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  of evaluating  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n$  with respect to  $l$  is in  $P^{\mathcal{M}}$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\forall x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for all  $a \in A$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\exists x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for some  $a \in A$ ;

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds or  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds;



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds or  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds and  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds; and



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds or  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds and  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds; and
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds.

# Satisfaction of Closed Formulas

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

If a formula  $\phi$  has no free variables, we call  $\phi$  a *sentence*.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

If a formula  $\phi$  has no free variables, we call  $\phi$  a *sentence*.

$\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds or does not hold regardless of the choice of  $l$ . Thus we write  $\mathcal{M} \models \phi$  or  $\mathcal{M} \not\models \phi$ .

# Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.



## Contents

### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

#### Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

#### Undecidability of Predicate Logic

#### Compactness of Predicate Calculus

#### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$  iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ , then  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$  iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ , then  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .

## Satisfiability of Formulas

$\psi$  is satisfiable iff there is some model  $\mathcal{M}$  and some environment  $l$  such that  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  holds.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

## Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$  iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ , then  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .

## Satisfiability of Formulas

$\psi$  is satisfiable iff there is some model  $\mathcal{M}$  and some environment  $l$  such that  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  holds.

## Satisfiability of Formula Sets

$\Gamma$  is satisfiable iff there is some model  $\mathcal{M}$  and some environment  $l$  such that  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ , for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ .



Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Validity

$\psi$  is valid iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , we have  
 $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# The Problem with Predicate Logic

## Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences:  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$  requires that in *all* models that satisfy  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ , the sentence  $\psi$  is satisfied.



### Contents

#### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

#### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences:  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$  requires that in *all* models that satisfy  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ , the sentence  $\psi$  is satisfied.

## How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.

### Contents

#### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

#### Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# The Problem with Predicate Logic

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences:  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$  requires that in *all* models that satisfy  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ , the sentence  $\psi$  is satisfied.

## How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.

## Idea from propositional logic

Can we use natural deduction for showing entailment?

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Central Result of Natural Deduction



$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

iff

$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$$

proven by Kurt Gödel, in 1929 in his doctoral dissertation

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

### Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

### Semantics of Predicate Logic

### Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

### Undecidability of Predicate Logic

### Compactness of Predicate Calculus

### Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Recall: Decidability

## Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Recall: Decidability

## Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

## Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Recall: Decidability

## Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

## Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.

## Decidability of satisfiability

The question, whether a given propositional formula is satisfiable, is decidable.

# Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?





## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.



# Post Correspondence Problem

## Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?

## Formally

Given a finite sequence of pairs  $(s_1, t_1), (s_2, t_2), \dots, (s_k, t_k)$  such that all  $s_i$  and  $t_i$  are binary strings of positive length, is there a sequence of indices  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$  with  $n \geq 1$  such that the concatenations  $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_n}$  and  $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_n}$  are equal?

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



# Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem

## Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem

## Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

## Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language  
Proof Theory of Predicate Logic  
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem

## Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

## Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.

## Proof idea

For a Turing machine with a given input, construct a PCP such that a solution of the PCP exists if and only if the Turing machine accepts the solution.



## Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ .

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Translate Post Correspondence Problem to Formula

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ .

## Strings as Terms

Represent the empty string by a constant  $e$ .

The string  $b_1 b_2 \dots b_l$  corresponds to the term

$$f_{b_l}(f_{b_{l-1}} \dots (f_{b_2}(f_{b_1}(e))) \dots)$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Towards a Formula for a PCP



Let C be the problem

$$\begin{array}{cccc} s_1 & s_2 & \dots & s_k \\ t_1 & t_2 & \dots & t_k \end{array}$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



Let C be the problem

$$\begin{array}{cccc} s_1 & s_2 & \dots & s_k \\ t_1 & t_2 & \dots & t_k \end{array}$$

### Idea

$P(s, t)$  holds iff there is a sequence of indices  $(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m)$  such that  $s$  is  $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_m}$  and  $t$  is  $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_m}$ .

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# The Formula $\phi$



$\phi = \phi_1 \wedge \phi_2 \rightarrow \phi_3$ , where

$$\phi_1 = \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(e), f_{t_i}(e))$$

$$\phi_2 = \forall v \forall w (P(v, w) \rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(v), f_{t_i}(w)))$$

$$\phi_3 = \exists z P(z, z)$$

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Undecidability of Predicate Logic

## So Far

Post correspondence problem is undecidable.

Constructed  $\phi_C$  for Post correspondence problem  $C$ .

## To Show

$\models \phi_C$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.

## Proof

Proof via construction of  $\phi_C$ . Formally construct an interpretation of strings and show that whenever there is a solution, the formula  $\phi_C$  holds and vice versa.



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language  
Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Summary of Undecidability Proof

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .



### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.

### Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?





## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Compactness Theorem

Let  $\Gamma$  be a set of sentences of predicate logic. If all finite subsets of  $\Gamma$  are satisfiable, then  $\Gamma$  is satisfiable.

# Proof of Compactness Theorem

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.

Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Proof of Compactness Theorem

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.  
We thus have  $\Gamma \models \perp$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Proof of Compactness Theorem

Advanced Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.

We thus have  $\Gamma \models \perp$ .

Via completeness, we have  $\Gamma \vdash \perp$ .

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Proof of Compactness Theorem



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.

We thus have  $\Gamma \models \perp$ .

Via completeness, we have  $\Gamma \vdash \perp$ .

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset  $\Delta \subset \Gamma$  of premises.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Proof of Compactness Theorem



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.

We thus have  $\Gamma \models \perp$ .

Via completeness, we have  $\Gamma \vdash \perp$ .

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset  $\Delta \subset \Gamma$  of premises.

Thus,  $\Delta \vdash \perp$ , and  $\Delta \models \perp$  via soundness.

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

# Reachability not Expressible in Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

There is no predicate logic formula  $\phi_{G,u,v}$  with  $u$  and  $v$  as its only free variables and  $R$  as its only predicate symbol, such that  $\phi_{G,u,v}$  holds iff there is a path from  $u$  to  $v$  in  $G$ .



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Let  $\psi$  be a sentence of predicate logic such that for any natural number  $n \geq 1$  there is a model of  $\psi$  with at least  $n$  elements.  
Then  $\psi$  has a model with infinitely many elements.

# Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



# Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

## Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;

## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?



## Contents

Predicate Logic:  
Motivation, Syntax,  
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal  
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate  
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate  
Logic

Soundness and  
Completeness of  
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of  
Predicate Logic

Compactness of  
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next  
Week Plan?

# Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

## Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

## Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;
- Applications of FoL.

# Chapter 1c

## Advanced Predicate Logic

*Discrete Mathematics II*



(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006." )

**Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen**  
*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*

# Contents

Advanced Predicate  
Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen





- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

## Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.

- *But:* How about statements with “*there exists...*” or “*every...*” or “*among...*”?





## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.

We express them in predicate logic using *predicates*.



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

- $S(An)$  could denote that An is a student.
- $I(Binh)$  could denote that Binh is an instructor.
- $Y(An, Binh)$  could denote that An is younger than Binh.



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

We use the predicate  $S$  to denote student-hood.

How do we express "*every student*"?

We need *variables* that can stand for constant values, and a *quantifier* symbol that denotes "*every*".



## Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

Using variables and quantifiers, we can write:

$$\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow (\exists y(I(y) \wedge Y(x, y)))).$$

Literally: For every  $x$ , if  $x$  is a student, then there is some  $y$  such that  $y$  is an instructor and  $x$  is younger than  $y$ .



## English

Not all birds can fly.

## Predicates

$B(x)$ :  $x$  is a bird

$F(x)$ :  $x$  can fly

## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\neg(\forall x(B(x) \rightarrow F(x)))$$



## A Third Example

### English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

### Predicates

$G(x)$ :  $x$  is a girl

$M(x, y)$ :  $y$  is  $x$ 's mother

$Y(x, y)$ :  $x$  is younger than  $y$

### The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$



## The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that  $y$  is only introduced to denote the mother of  $x$ .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate  $M(x, y)$  is a function, when read from right to left.

We introduce a function symbol  $m$  that can be applied to variables and constants as in

$$\forall x (G(x) \rightarrow Y(x, m(x)))$$



## A Drastic Example

### English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

### The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(An, y) \wedge M(v, u) \wedge M(Binh, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$

### The same sentence in predicate logic with functions

$$m(m(An)) = m(m(Binh))$$



- Syntax:** We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.
- Proof theory:** We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic
- Semantics:** We describe models in which predicates, functions, and formulas have meaning.
- Further topics:** Soundness/completeness (beyond scope of module), undecidability, incompleteness results, compactness results, extensions





At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols  $\mathcal{P}$
- a set of function symbols  $\mathcal{F}$
- a set of constant symbols  $\mathcal{C}$



Every function symbol in  $\mathcal{F}$  and predicate symbol in  $\mathcal{P}$  comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.

## Special case

Function symbols with arity 0 are called *constants*.



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- $x$  ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- $c$  ranges over nullary function symbols in  $\mathcal{F}$ , and
- $f$  ranges over function symbols in  $\mathcal{F}$  with arity  $n > 0$ .



If  $n$  is nullary,  $f$  is unary, and  $g$  is binary, then examples of terms are:

- $g(f(n), n)$
- $f(g(n, f(n)))$



## More Examples of Terms

If  $0, 1, \dots$  are nullary,  $s$  is unary, and  $+, -$  and  $*$  are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.

Occasionally, we allow ourselves to use infix notation for function symbols as in

$$(2 - (s(x) + y)) * x$$



$$\begin{aligned}\phi ::= & P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ & (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)\end{aligned}$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$  is a predicate symbol of arity  $n \geq 1$ ,
- $t_i$  are terms over  $\mathcal{F}$  and
- $x$  is a variable.



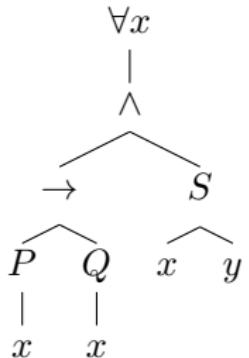
Just like for propositional logic, we introduce convenient conventions to reduce the number of parentheses:

- $\neg$ ,  $\forall x$  and  $\exists x$  bind most tightly;
- then  $\wedge$  and  $\vee$ ;
- then  $\rightarrow$ , which is right-associative.



$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

has parse tree





## Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

### Predicates

$S(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a son of  $y$

$B(x, y)$ :  $x$  is a brother of  $y$

### Functions

$m$ : constant for “me”

$f(x)$ : father of  $x$

### The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$

Does this formula hold?

Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$

## Example

Instead of the formula

$$= (f(x), g(x))$$

we usually write the formula

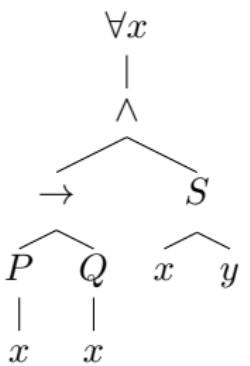
$$f(x) = g(x)$$



Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder”  $x$  and occurrences of  $x$ ?



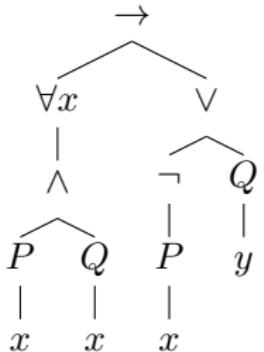


## Free and Bound Variables

Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?





# Substitution

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

## Definition

Given a variable  $x$ , a term  $t$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we define  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$  to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable  $x$  in  $\phi$  with  $t$ .

## Example

$$\begin{aligned}[x \Rightarrow f(x, y)](\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) &\rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))) \\ &= \forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y))\end{aligned}$$



Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

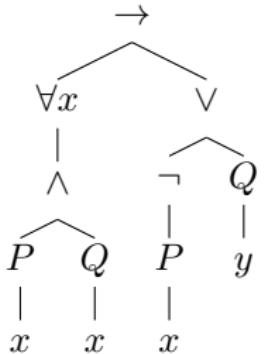
the textbook uses the notation

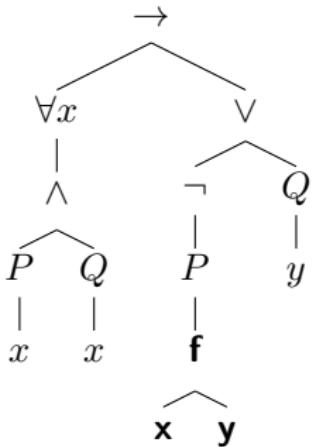
$$\phi[t/x]$$

(we find the order of arguments in the latter notation hard to remember)



## Example as Parse Tree

$$[x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)))$$
$$= (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y))$$






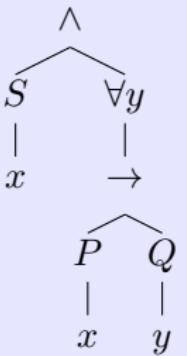
## Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

### Problem

$t$  contains variable  $y$  and  $x$  occurs under the scope of  $\forall y$  in  $\phi$

### Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$





# Avoiding Capturing

## Definition

Given a term  $t$ , a variable  $x$  and a formula  $\phi$ , we say that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$  if no free  $x$  leaf in  $\phi$  occurs in the scope of  $\forall y$  or  $\exists y$  for any variable  $y$  occurring in  $t$ .

## Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute  $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ , we demand that  $t$  is free for  $x$  in  $\phi$ .

## What if not?

Rename the bound variable!



$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

 $\Downarrow$ 

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$

 $\Downarrow$ 

$$S(f(y, y)) \wedge \forall z(P(f(y, y)) \rightarrow Q(z))$$





# Natural Deduction for Predicate Logic

## Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.

## Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.

## Example

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

# Built-in Rules for Equality



$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$



## Properties of Equality

We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$

- |   |                     |             |
|---|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 | $f(x) = g(x)$       | premise     |
| 2 | $h(f(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= i$       |
| 3 | $h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= e \ 1,2$ |

# Rules for Universal Quantification



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi}$$



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{\frac{}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi}}$$

We prove:  $F(g(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(g(Duong))$

- |   |  |                     |
|---|--|---------------------|
| 1 | $F(g(Duong))$                              | premise             |
| 2 | $\forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x))$    | premise             |
| 3 | $F(g(Duong)) \rightarrow \neg M(g(Duong))$ | $\forall x e 2$     |
| 4 | $\neg M(g(Duong))$                         | $\rightarrow e 3,1$ |

## Rules for Universal Quantification



If we manage to establish a formula  $\phi$  about a fresh variable  $x_0$ , we can assume  $\forall x \phi$ .

$$\frac{\boxed{x_0 \\ \vdots \\ [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi}}{\forall x \ i} \forall x \phi$$



## Example

			$x_0$ $\vdots$ $[x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi$
			<hr/>
1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$		premise
2	$\forall xP(x)$		premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$		$\forall x \ e \ 1$
4	$P(x_0)$		$\forall x \ e \ 2$
5	$Q(x_0)$		$\rightarrow e \ 3,4$
6	$\forall xQ(x)$		$\forall x \ i \ 3-5$

# Rules for Existential Quantification



$$\frac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \ i} \quad \exists x \phi$$

$$\frac{\exists x \phi \quad \boxed{x_0 \quad [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi}}{\chi} \quad [\exists e]$$



## Example

$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \exists xP(x) \vdash \exists xQ(x)$$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\exists xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0)$	assumption
4	$P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \ e \ 1$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow e \ 4,3$
6	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ i \ 5$
7	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ e \ 2,3\text{--}6$



$$\neg \forall x \phi \dashv\vdash \exists x \neg \phi$$

$$\neg \exists x \phi \dashv\vdash \forall x \neg \phi$$

$$\exists x \exists y \phi \dashv\vdash \exists y \exists x \phi$$

Assume  $x$  is not free in  $\psi$ :

$$\forall x \phi \wedge \psi \dashv\vdash \forall x (\phi \wedge \psi)$$

$$\exists x (\psi \rightarrow \phi) \dashv\vdash \psi \rightarrow \exists x \phi$$



## Definition

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  contain function symbols and  $\mathcal{P}$  contain predicate symbols.  
A model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  consists of:

- ① A non-empty set  $A$ , the *universe*;
- ② for each nullary function symbol  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  a concrete element  $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$ ;
- ③ for each  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a concrete function  $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$ ;
- ④ for each  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a set  $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$ .





## Example

Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{e, \cdot\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .



## Example (continued)

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^M = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^M s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^M$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^M s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

### Some Elements of $A$

- 10001
- $\epsilon$
- $1010 \cdot^M 1100 = 10101100$
- $\epsilon$
- $000 \cdot^M \epsilon = 000$



## Interpretation of equality

Usually, we require that the equality predicate  $=$  is interpreted as same-ness.

## Extensionality restriction

This means that allowable models are restricted to those in which  $a =^{\mathcal{M}} b$  holds if and only if  $a$  and  $b$  are the same elements of the model's universe.



- ① Let  $A$  be the set of binary strings over the alphabet  $\{0, 1\}$ ;
- ② let  $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$ , the empty string;
- ③ let  $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  is the concatenation of the strings  $s_1$  and  $s_2$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$  iff  $s_1$  is a prefix of  $s_2$ .

### Equality in $\mathcal{M}$

- $000 =^{\mathcal{M}} 000$
- $001 \neq^{\mathcal{M}} 100$



Let  $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$  and  $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$ .

Let model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  be defined as follows:

- ① Let  $A$  be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let  $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$ ;
- ③ let  $s^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $s(n) = n + 1$ ; and
- ④ let  $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$  be defined such that  $n_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} n_2$  iff the natural number  $n_1$  is less than or equal to  $n_2$ .

# How To Handle Free Variables?



## Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$

## Environment extension

We define environment extension such that  $l[x \mapsto a]$  is the environment that maps  $x$  to  $a$  and any other variable  $y$  to  $l(y)$ .



## Satisfaction Relation

The model  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies  $\phi$  with respect to environment  $l$ , written  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ :

- in case  $\phi$  is of the form  $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$ , if the result  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  of evaluating  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n$  with respect to  $l$  is in  $P^{\mathcal{M}}$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\forall x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for all  $a \in A$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\exists x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for some  $a \in A$ ;



- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds or  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds and  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds; and
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds.

## Satisfaction of Closed Formulas



If a formula  $\phi$  has no free variables, we call  $\phi$  a *sentence*.  
 $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds or does not hold regardless of the choice of  $l$ . Thus  
we write  $\mathcal{M} \models \phi$  or  $\mathcal{M} \not\models \phi$ .

Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$  iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$  holds for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ , then  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .



## Satisfiability of Formulas

$\psi$  is satisfiable iff there is some model  $\mathcal{M}$  and some environment  $l$  such that  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  holds.

## Satisfiability of Formula Sets

$\Gamma$  is satisfiable iff there is some model  $\mathcal{M}$  and some environment  $l$  such that  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ , for all  $\phi \in \Gamma$ .



Let  $\Gamma$  be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and  $\psi$  a formula.

## Validity

$\psi$  is valid iff for all models  $\mathcal{M}$  and environments  $l$ , we have  
 $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ .



## Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences:  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$  requires that in *all* models that satisfy  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ , the sentence  $\psi$  is satisfied.

## How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.

## Idea from propositional logic

Can we use natural deduction for showing entailment?

# Central Result of Natural Deduction



$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

iff

$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$$

proven by Kurt Gödel, in 1929 in his doctoral dissertation



## Recall: Decidability

### Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

### Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.

### Decidability of satisfiability

The question, whether a given propositional formula is satisfiable, is decidable.



## Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

## Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.



## Post Correspondence Problem

### Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?

### Formally

Given a finite sequence of pairs  $(s_1, t_1), (s_2, t_2), \dots, (s_k, t_k)$  such that all  $s_i$  and  $t_i$  are binary strings of positive length, is there a sequence of indices  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$  with  $n \geq 1$  such that the concatenations  $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_n}$  and  $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_n}$  are equal?

## Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.



## Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.

## Proof idea

For a Turing machine with a given input, construct a PCP such that a solution of the PCP exists if and only if the Turing machine accepts the solution.



## Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions  $f_0$  and  $f_1$ .

## Strings as Terms

Represent the empty string by a constant  $e$ .

The string  $b_1 b_2 \dots b_l$  corresponds to the term

$$f_{b_l}(f_{b_{l-1}} \dots (f_{b_2}(f_{b_1}(e))) \dots)$$



Let C be the problem  $\begin{array}{cccc} s_1 & s_2 & \dots & s_k \\ t_1 & t_2 & \dots & t_k \end{array}$

## Idea

$P(s, t)$  holds iff there is a sequence of indices  $(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m)$  such that  $s$  is  $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_m}$  and  $t$  is  $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_m}$ .

The Formula  $\phi$ 

$\phi = \phi_1 \wedge \phi_2 \rightarrow \phi_3$ , where

$$\phi_1 = \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(e), f_{t_i}(e))$$

$$\phi_2 = \forall v \forall w (P(v, w) \rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(v), f_{t_i}(w)))$$

$$\phi_3 = \exists z P(z, z)$$



## So Far

Post correspondence problem is undecidable.

Constructed  $\phi_C$  for Post correspondence problem  $C$ .

## To Show

$\models \phi_C$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.

## Proof

Proof via construction of  $\phi_C$ . Formally construct an interpretation of strings and show that whenever there is a solution, the formula  $\phi_C$  holds and vice versa.



## Summary of Undecidability Proof

### Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula  $\phi$  in that language, decides whether  $\models \phi$ .

### Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say  $C$ , to a formula  $\phi$ .
- Establish that  $\models \phi$  holds if and only if  $C$  has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.

# Compactness Theorem



Let  $\Gamma$  be a set of sentences of predicate logic. If all finite subsets of  $\Gamma$  are satisfiable, then  $\Gamma$  is satisfiable.

# Proof of Compactness Theorem



Assume  $\Gamma$  is not satisfiable.

We thus have  $\Gamma \models \perp$ .

Via completeness, we have  $\Gamma \vdash \perp$ .

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset  $\Delta \subset \Gamma$  of premises.

Thus,  $\Delta \vdash \perp$ , and  $\Delta \models \perp$  via soundness.



## Reachability not Expressible in Predicate Logic

There is no predicate logic formula  $\phi_{G,u,v}$  with  $u$  and  $v$  as its only free variables and  $R$  as its only predicate symbol, such that  $\phi_{G,u,v}$  holds iff there is a path from  $u$  to  $v$  in  $G$ .



Let  $\psi$  be a sentence of predicate logic such that for any natural number  $n \geq 1$  there is a model of  $\psi$  with at least  $n$  elements. Then  $\psi$  has a model with infinitely many elements.



## Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

### Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

### Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;
- Applications of FoL.

# Chapter 1d

## Examples on Using Proposition and Predicate Logic

*Discrete Mathematics II*



Contents

Natural Deduction in  
Propositional Logic:  
Electing Puzzle

Expressing  
specifications by  
Predicate Logic:  
Protocol Requirements

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006." )

**Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen**  
*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*

# Contents

Examples on Using  
Proposition and  
Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Contents

Natural Deduction in  
Propositional Logic:  
Electing Puzzle

Expressing  
specifications by  
Predicate Logic:  
Protocol Requirements

- ① Natural Deduction in Propositional Logic: Electing Puzzle**
- ② Expressing specifications by Predicate Logic: Protocol Requirements**

# Electing Puzzle

Examples on Using  
Proposition and  
Predicate Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Contents

Natural Deduction in  
Propositional Logic:  
Electing Puzzle

Expressing  
specifications by  
Predicate Logic:  
Protocol Requirements

- Four men and four women are nominated for two positions.
- Exactly one man and one woman are elected.
- The men are  $A, B, C, D$  and the women are  $E, F, G, H$ . We know:
  - if neither  $A$  nor  $E$  won, then  $G$  won
  - if neither  $A$  nor  $F$  won, then  $B$  won
  - if neither  $B$  nor  $G$  won, then  $C$  won
  - if neither  $C$  nor  $F$  won, then  $E$  won.
- Who were the two people elected?



Contents

Natural Deduction in  
Propositional Logic:  
Electing Puzzle

Expressing  
specifications by  
Predicate Logic:  
Protocol Requirements

## Huth and Ryan [2], Exercises 2.1.5: Protocol Requirements

- The following sentences are taken from the **RFC3157 Internet Task-force Document ‘Securely Available Credentials – Requirements.’**
- Specify it in predicate logic, defining predicate symbols as appropriate:
  - An attacker can persuade a server that a successful login has occurred, even if it hasn't.
  - An attacker can overwrite someone else's credentials on the server.
  - All users enter passwords instead of names.
  - Credential transfer both to and from a device MUST be supported.
  - Credentials MUST NOT be forced by the protocol to be present in cleartext at any device other than the end user's.
  - The protocol MUST support a range of cryptographic algorithms, including symmetric and asymmetric algorithms, hash algorithms, and MAC algorithms.
  - Credentials MUST only be downloadable following user authentication or else only downloadable in a format that requires completion of user authentication for deciphering.
  - Different end user devices MAY be used to download, upload, or manage the same set of credentials.



Contents

Natural Deduction in  
Propositional Logic:  
Electing Puzzle

Expressing  
specifications by  
Predicate Logic:  
Protocol Requirements

- a. An attacker can persuade a server that a successful login has occurred, even if it hasn't:

$$\phi := \exists a \exists s ((\neg \text{loggedIn}(a, s)) \longrightarrow (\text{canPersuade}(a, s))).$$

- b. An attacker can overwrite someone else's credentials on the server:  $\phi := \exists u \exists c \exists s \exists d ((\neg \text{ownsCredentials}(u, c)) \longrightarrow \text{canWrite}(u, c, s, d)).$

# Chapter 1e

## Predicate Logic and Program Verification

*Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)*



[Contents](#)

[Warm-up questions](#)

[Program Verification](#)

[Homeworks](#)

(Materials drawn from:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.")

**Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen**  
*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*

# Contents

Predicate Logic and  
Program Verification

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Contents

Warm-up questions

Program Verification

Homeworks

## ① Warm-up questions

## ② Program Verification

## ③ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Warm-up questions](#)[Program Verification](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Warm-up questions

- a) Are there expressions in Predicate Logic that do not evaluate to TRUE or FALSE? If so, give an example.

Ans.: Terms, unlike predicates and formulas, do not evaluate to the distinguished symbols true or false. Examples of terms include:  $a$ , a constant (or 0-ary function);  $x$ , a variable;  $f(t)$ , a unary function  $f$  applied to a term  $t$ .

- b) Is  $p(a) \rightarrow \exists x.p(x)$  a valid formula?

Ans.: Yes

- c) How do you represent a propositional variable (as used in Propositional Logic) in a Predicate Logic formula?

Ans.: As a 0-ary predicate.

- d) Fermat's Last Theorem is the name of the statement in number theory that: *It is impossible to separate any power higher than the second into two like powers.*

Or, more precisely:

If an integer  $n$  is greater than 2, then the equation  $x^n + y^n = z^n$  has no solutions in positive integers  $x, y$ , and  $z$ . Formulate the above statement in Predicate Logic with Equality?

# Warm-up questions (cont'd): An answer to Fermat's Last Theorem Formulation

Predicate Logic and  
Program Verification

Nguyen An Khuong,  
Huynh Tuong Nguyen



Contents

Warm-up questions

Program Verification

Homeworks

$$\forall n. \text{integer}(n) \wedge n > 2 \longrightarrow \forall x, y, z. \text{integer}(x) \wedge \text{integer}(y) \wedge \text{integer}(z) \wedge x > 0 \wedge y > 0 \wedge z > 0 \longrightarrow x^n + y^n \neq z^n.$$

- Below is a function written in an imperative programming language to perform *binary search*, by returning TRUE iff the array *a* contains the value *e* and FALSE otherwise, under the assumption that the input range is sorted.

```
bool binarySearch ( int [] a, int l, int u, int e) {  
    if (l > u) return false ;  
    else {  
        int m = (l + u) div 2;  
        if (a[m] == e) return true ;  
        else if (a[m] < e) return binarySearch (a, m + 1, u, e);  
        else return binarySearch (a, l, m - 1, e);  
    }  
}
```

- As a first step towards determining whether an implementation (such as that in the function above) fulfills its specification, the specification has to be formalized. We do so in terms of *preconditions* and *postconditions*.



[Contents](#)

[Warm-up questions](#)

[Program Verification](#)

[Homeworks](#)



Contents

Warm-up questions

Program Verification

Homeworks

- A *precondition* specifies what should be true upon entering the function (i.e., under what inputs the function is expected to work).
- The *postcondition* is a formula  $G$  whose free variables include only the formal parameters and the special variable  $rv$  representing the return value of the function.
- The postcondition relates the function's output (the return value  $rv$ ) to its input (the parameters).

Prob: Formulate in Predicate Logic the precondition and the postcondition for `binarySearch`.

# Program Verification (cont'd): Answer



Contents

Warm-up questions

Program Verification

Homeworks

- First precondition:  $0 \leq l \wedge u < |a|$
- Second precondition:  
 $\forall i, j. \text{integer}(i) \wedge \text{integer}(j) \wedge 0 \leq i \leq j < |a| \longrightarrow a[i] \leq a[j]$
- Postcondition:  $rv \longleftrightarrow \exists i. l \leq i \leq u \wedge a[i] = e$

[Contents](#)[Warm-up questions](#)[Program Verification](#)[Homeworks](#)

1. Do all HWs which have not been done in previous lectures.
2. Try to understand deeply the following notations/terms arity, expression, term, formula, atomic formula, sentence, clause, Backus Naur form (BNF), parse tree, precondition, postcondition, binding priorities, provability, witness, scope, bound, verification, model checking, Hoare triple, and their other related notation/terms.
3. Do exercise 1.5.14 on page 89 in [2].
4. Consider the following program

```
temp := x
x := y
y := temp
```

What does this tiny program do? Find preconditions, postconditions and verify its correctness?

# Chapter 1f

## Program Verification

*Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)*



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

(Materials drawn from:

"Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.")

**Nguyen An Khuong**

*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering  
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*



- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- ⑦ Homeworks

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks



## Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

# Motivation

- One way of checking the correctness of programs is to explore the possible states that a computation system can reach during the execution of the program.
- Problems with this *model checking* approach:
  - Models become infinite.
  - Satisfaction/validity becomes undecidable.
- In this lecture, we cover a proof-based framework for program verification.



## Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

# Characteristics of the Approach

Proof-based instead of model checking

Semi-automatic instead of automatic

Property-oriented not using full specification

Application domain fixed to sequential programs using integers

Interleaved with development rather than a-posteriori verification



## Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

# Reasons for Program Verification

**Documentation.** Program properties formulated as theorems can serve as concise documentation

**Time-to-market.** Verification prevents/catches bugs and can reduce development time

**Reuse.** Clear specification provides basis for reuse

**Certification.** Verification is required in safety-critical domains such as nuclear power stations and aircraft cockpits



## Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

**Convert** informal description  $R$  of *requirements* for an application domain into formula  $\phi_R$ .

**Write** program  $P$  that meets  $\phi_R$ .

**Prove** that  $P$  satisfies  $\phi_R$ .

Each step provides risks and opportunities.



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

## ① Core Programming Language

## ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

## ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

## ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

## ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function

## ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

## ⑦ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Motivation of Core Language

- Real-world languages are quite large; many features and constructs
- Verification framework would exceed time we have in CS5209
- Theoretical constructions such as Turing machines or lambda calculus are too far from actual applications; too low-level
- Idea: use subset of Pascal/C/C++/Java
- Benefit: we can study useful “realistic” examples

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Expressions in Core Language

Expressions come as arithmetic expressions  $E$ :

$$E ::= n \mid x \mid (-E) \mid (E + E) \mid (E - E) \mid (E * E)$$

and boolean expressions  $B$ :

$$B ::= \text{true} \mid \text{false} \mid (!B) \mid (B \& B) \mid (B \parallel B) \mid (E < E)$$

Where are the other comparisons, for example  $==$ ?

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Commands in Core Language

Commands cover some common programming idioms. Expressions are components of commands.

$$C ::= x = E \mid C; C \mid \text{if } B \{C\} \text{ else } \{C\} \mid \text{while } B \{C\}$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Example

Consider the factorial function:

$$\begin{aligned} 0! &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1 \\ (n+1)! &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (n+1) \cdot n! \end{aligned}$$

We shall show that after the execution of the following Core program, we have  $y = x!$ .

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```



## ① Core Programming Language

Contents

Core Programming  
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial  
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for  
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of  
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the  
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for  
Total Correctness

Homeworks

## ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

## ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

## ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

## ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function

## ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

## ⑦ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- We need to be able to say that at the end, y is x!

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- We need to be able to say that at the end,  $y$  is  $x$ !
- That means we require a *post-condition*  $y = x$ !

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

**Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.**

Example:  $x > 0$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

**Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.**

Example:  $x > 0$

- Do we have to prove the postcondition in one go?

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

**Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.**

Example:  $x > 0$

- Do we have to prove the postcondition in one go?

**No, the postcondition of one line can be the pre-condition of the next!**



## Shape of assertions

$$\langle\phi\rangle P \langle\psi\rangle$$

## Informal meaning

If the program  $P$  is run in a state that satisfies  $\phi$ , then the state resulting from  $P$ 's execution will satisfy  $\psi$ .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## (Slightly Trivial) Example

### Informal specification

Given a positive number  $x$ , the program  $P$  calculates a number  $y$  whose square is less than  $x$ .

### Assertion

$$(x > 0) \ P \ (y \cdot y < x)$$

### Example for $P$

$y = 0$

### Our first Hoare triple

$$(x > 0) \ y = 0 \ (y \cdot y < x)$$



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

# (Slightly Less Trivial) Example

## Same assertion

$$\langle x > 0 \rangle \ P \ \langle y \cdot y < x \rangle$$

## Another example for $P$

```
y = 0;  
while (y * y < x) {  
    y = y + 1;  
}  
y = y - 1;
```

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Recall: Models in Predicate Logic

## Definition

Let  $\mathcal{F}$  contain function symbols and  $\mathcal{P}$  contain predicate symbols.  
A model  $\mathcal{M}$  for  $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$  consists of:

- ① A non-empty set  $A$ , the *universe*;
- ② for each nullary function symbol  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  a concrete element  $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$ ;
- ③ for each  $f \in \mathcal{F}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a concrete function  $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$ ;
- ④ for each  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  with arity  $n > 0$ , a set  $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$ .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Recall: Satisfaction Relation

The model  $\mathcal{M}$  satisfies  $\phi$  with respect to environment  $l$ , written  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ :

- in case  $\phi$  is of the form  $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$ , if the result  $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  of evaluating  $t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n$  with respect to  $l$  is in  $P^{\mathcal{M}}$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\forall x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for all  $a \in A$ ;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\exists x\psi$ , if the  $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$  holds for some  $a \in A$ ;

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Recall: Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\neg\psi$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$  does not hold;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds or  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds;
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds and  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds; and
- in case  $\phi$  has the form  $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$ , if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$  holds whenever  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$  holds.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Hoare Triples

## Definition

An assertion of the form  $(\phi) P (\psi)$  is called a Hoare triple.

- $\phi$  is called the precondition,  $\psi$  is called the postcondition.
- A state of a Core program  $P$  is a function  $l$  that assigns each variable  $x$  in  $P$  to an integer  $l(x)$ .
- A state  $l$  satisfies  $\phi$  if  $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ , where  $\mathcal{M}$  contains integers and gives the usual meaning to the arithmetic operations.
- Quantifiers in  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  bind only variables that do *not* occur in the program  $P$ .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Example

Let  $l(x) = -2$ ,  $l(y) = 5$  and  $l(z) = -1$ . We have:

- $l \models \neg(x + y < z)$
- $l \not\models y = x \cdot z < z$
- $l \not\models \forall u(y < u \rightarrow y \cdot z < u \cdot z)$



## Definition

We say that the triple  $(\phi) P (\psi)$  is *satisfied under partial correctness* if, for all states which satisfy  $\phi$ , the state resulting from  $P$ 's execution satisfies  $\psi$ , provided that  $P$  terminates.

## Notation

We write  $\models_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$ .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Extreme Example

```
(φ) while true { x = 0; } (ψ)
```

holds for all  $\phi$  and  $\psi$ .



## Definition

We say that the triple  $(\phi) P (\psi)$  is *satisfied under total correctness* if, for all states which satisfy  $\phi$ ,  $P$  is guaranteed to terminate and the resulting state satisfies  $\psi$ .

## Notation

We write  $\models_{\text{tot}} (\phi) P (\psi)$ .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Back to Factorial

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$



Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$

Contents

Core Programming  
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial  
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for  
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of  
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the  
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for  
Total Correctness

Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Back to Factorial

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;
z = 0;
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$



# Back to Factorial

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;
z = 0;
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$

[Contents](#)

[Core Programming Language](#)

[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)

[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)

[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)

[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)

[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)

[Homeworks](#)



- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- ⑦ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Strategy

We are looking for a proof calculus that allows us to establish

$$\vdash_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$$

where

- $\models_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$  holds whenever  $\vdash_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$  (correctness), and
- $\vdash_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$  holds whenever  $\models_{\text{par}} (\phi) P (\psi)$  (completeness).

# Rules for Partial Correctness

Program Verification

Nguyen An Khuong



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

$$\frac{(\phi) \ C_1 \ (\eta) \quad (\eta) \ C_2 \ (\psi)}{(\phi) \ C_1; C_2 \ (\psi)} \text{ [Composition]}$$

# Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)

Program Verification

Nguyen An Khuong



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

---

[Assignment]

$$([x \rightarrow E]\psi) \ x = E \ (\psi)$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Examples

Let P be the program  $x = 2$ .

Using

---

[Assignment]

$$\{[x \rightarrow E]\psi\} x = E \ \{\psi\}$$

we can prove:

- $\{2 = 2\} P \ \{x = 2\}$
- $\{2 = 4\} P \ \{x = 4\}$
- $\{2 = y\} P \ \{x = y\}$
- $\{2 > 0\} P \ \{x > 0\}$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## More Examples

Let P be the program  $x = x + 1$ .  
Using

---

[Assignment]

$$\langle [x \rightarrow E]\psi \rangle x = E \langle \psi \rangle$$

we can prove:

- $\langle x + 1 = 2 \rangle P \langle x = 2 \rangle$
- $\langle x + 1 = y \rangle P \langle x = y \rangle$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)

$$\langle\!\langle \phi \wedge B \rangle\!\rangle \ C_1 \ \langle\!\langle \psi \rangle\!\rangle \quad \langle\!\langle \phi \wedge \neg B \rangle\!\rangle \ C_2 \ \langle\!\langle \psi \rangle\!\rangle$$

---

[If-statement]

$$\langle\!\langle \phi \rangle\!\rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle\!\langle \psi \rangle\!\rangle$$

$$\langle\!\langle \psi \wedge B \rangle\!\rangle \ C \ \langle\!\langle \psi \rangle\!\rangle$$

---

[Partial-while]

$$\langle\!\langle \psi \rangle\!\rangle \text{ while } B \{ C \} \langle\!\langle \psi \wedge \neg B \rangle\!\rangle$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

$$\vdash_{AR} \phi' \rightarrow \phi \quad (\phi) \ C \ (\psi) \quad \vdash_{AR} \psi \rightarrow \psi'$$

---

[Implied]

$$(\phi') \ C \ (\psi')$$



## Proofs have tree shape

All rules have the structure

something

---

something else

As a result, all proofs can be written as a tree.

## Practical concern

These trees tend to be very wide when written out on paper. Thus we are using a linear format, called *proof tableaux*.

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Interleave Formulas with Code

$$\langle\phi\rangle C_1 \langle\eta\rangle \quad \langle\eta\rangle C_2 \langle\psi\rangle$$


---

[Composition]

$$\langle\phi\rangle C_1; C_2 \langle\psi\rangle$$

Shape of rule suggests format for proof of  $C_1; C_2; \dots; C_n$ :

$$\langle\phi_0\rangle$$

$$C_1;$$

$$\langle\phi_1\rangle \quad \text{justification}$$

$$C_2;$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\langle\phi_{n-1}\rangle \quad \text{justification}$$

$$C_n;$$

$$\langle\phi_n\rangle \quad \text{justification}$$



## Overall goal

Find a proof that at the end of executing a program  $P$ , some condition  $\psi$  holds.

## Common situation

If  $P$  has the shape  $C_1; \dots; C_n$ , we need to find the weakest formula  $\psi'$  such that

$$(\psi') \ C_n \ (\psi)$$

## Terminology

The weakest formula  $\psi'$  is called *weakest precondition*.

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Example

$$\{y < 3\}$$
$$\{y + 1 < 4\} \quad \text{Implied}$$

```
y = y + 1;
```

$$\{y < 4\} \quad \text{Assignment}$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Another Example

Can we claim  $u = x + y$  after  $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{x}; \ z = z + y; \ u = z;$  ?

$(\top)$

$(x + y = x + y)$  Implied

$\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{x};$

$(z + y = x + y)$  Assignment

$\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z} + \mathbf{y};$

$(z = x + y)$  Assignment

$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{z};$

$(u = x + y)$  Assignment

# An Alternative Rule for If



We have:

$$\langle\phi \wedge B\rangle C_1 \langle\psi\rangle \quad \langle\phi \wedge \neg B\rangle C_2 \langle\psi\rangle$$

---

[If-statement]

$$\langle\phi\rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle\psi\rangle$$

Sometimes, the following *derived rule* is more suitable:

$$\langle\phi_1\rangle C_1 \langle\psi\rangle \quad \langle\phi_2\rangle C_2 \langle\psi\rangle$$

---

[If-stmt 2]

$$\langle(B \rightarrow \phi_1) \wedge (\neg B \rightarrow \phi_2)\rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle\psi\rangle$$

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Example

Consider this implementation of Succ:

```
a = x + 1;  
if (a - 1 == 0) {  
    y = 1;  
} else {  
    y = a;  
}
```

Can we prove  $(\top) \text{ Succ } (y = x + 1)$  ?

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
:  
if ( a - 1 == 0 ) {  
     $\{1 = x + 1\}$       If-Statement 2  
    y = 1;  
     $\{y = x + 1\}$       Assignment  
} else {  
     $\{a = x + 1\}$       If-Statement 2  
    y = a;  
     $\{y = x + 1\}$       Assignment  
}  
     $\{y = x + 1\}$       If-Statement 2
```

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Another Example

 $\{\top\}$ 
 $((x + 1 - 1 = 0 \rightarrow 1 = x + 1) \wedge$ 
 $(\neg(x + 1 - 1 = 0) \rightarrow x + 1 = x + 1)\} \quad \text{Implied}$ 
 $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{x} + 1;$ 
 $((a - 1 = 0 \rightarrow 1 = x + 1) \wedge$ 
 $(\neg(a - 1 = 0) \rightarrow a = x + 1)\} \quad \text{Assignment}$ 
 $\mathbf{if} (\mathbf{a} - 1 == 0) \{$ 
 $\quad (1 = x + 1)\} \quad \text{If-Statement 2}$ 
 $\quad \mathbf{y} = 1;$ 
 $\quad (y = x + 1)\} \quad \text{Assignment}$ 
 $\} \mathbf{else} \{$ 
 $\quad (a = x + 1)\} \quad \text{If-Statement 2}$ 
 $\quad \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{a};$ 
 $\quad (y = x + 1)\} \quad \text{Assignment}$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Recall: Partial-while Rule

$$\frac{(\psi \wedge B) \ C \ (\psi)}{\text{[Partial-while]} \quad \langle\psi\rangle \text{ while } B \{ C \} \ (\psi \wedge \neg B)}$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Factorial Example

We shall show that the following Core program Fac1 meets this specification:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

Thus, to show:

$$(\top) \text{Fac1 } (y = x!)$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```

:
( $y = z!$ )
while (  $z \neq x$  ) {
    ( $y = z! \wedge z \neq x$ )           Invariant
    ( $y \cdot (z + 1) = (z + 1)!$ )     Implied
     $z = z + 1;$ 
    ( $y \cdot z = z!$ )                 Assignment
     $y = y * z;$ 
    ( $y = z!$ )                     Assignment
}
( $y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x)$ )      Partial-while
( $y = x!$ )                      Implied
  
```

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Partial Correctness of Fact1

$$\{ \top \}$$

$$\{ (1 = 0!) \}$$

Implied

$$y = 1;$$

$$\{ (y = 0!) \}$$

Assignment

$$z = 0;$$

$$\{ (y = z!) \}$$

Assignment

$$\text{while } ( z \neq x ) \{$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\}$$

$$\{ (y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x)) \}$$

$$\{ (y = x!) \}$$

Partial-while

Implied



## ① Core Programming Language

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

## ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

## ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

## ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

## ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function

## ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

## ⑦ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

- The only source of non-termination is the while command.
- If we can show that the value of an integer expression decreases in each iteration, but never becomes negative, we have proven termination.  
Why? Well-foundedness of natural numbers
- We shall include this argument in a new version of the while rule.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

## Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)

$$(\psi \wedge B) \ C \ (\psi)$$


---

[Partial-while]

$$(\psi) \text{ while } B \{ C \} (\psi \wedge \neg B)$$

$$(\psi \wedge B \wedge 0 \leq E = E_0) \ C \ (\psi \wedge 0 \leq E < E_0)$$


---

[Total-while]

$$(\psi \wedge 0 \leq E) \text{ while } B \{ C \} (\psi \wedge \neg B)$$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant  $E$ ?

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant  $E$ ?

$E$  must strictly decrease in the loop, but not become negative.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Factorial Example (Again!)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant  $E$ ?

$E$  must strictly decrease in the loop, but not become negative.

Answer:

$$x - z$$

# Total Correctness of Fac1



:		
$(y = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z)$		
<b>while</b> ( $z \neq x$ ) {		
$(y = z! \wedge z \neq x \wedge 0 \leq x - z = E_0)$	Invariant	
$(y \cdot (z + 1) = (z + 1)! \wedge 0 \leq x - (z + 1) < E_0)$	Implied	
$z = z + 1;$		
$(y \cdot z = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z < E_0)$	Assignment	
$y = y * z;$		
$(y = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z < E_0)$	Assignment	
}		
$(y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x))$	Total-while	
$(y = x!)$	Implied	

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

# Total Correctness of Fac1

$$(x \leq 0)$$

$$((1 = 0!) \wedge 0 \leq x - 0)$$
 Implied

$$y = 1;$$

$$(y = 0!) \wedge 0 \leq x - 0)$$
 Assignment

$$z = 0;$$

$$(y = z!) \wedge 0 \leq x - z)$$
 Assignment

$$\text{while } (z \neq x) \{$$

$$\vdots$$

$$\}$$

$$(y = z!) \wedge \neg(z \neq x))$$
 Total-while

$$(y = x!)$$
 Implied

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Do as much as possible (at least ALL marked) problems given in Section 4.6 in [2]